

**39**

AWARD  
Tech Report  
Series

# Review of Socio-Ecological Issues in Municipal Planning Instruments Olifants Catchment

[Full Report]

Deborah Vromans

2015



USAID  
FROM THE AMERICAN PEOPLE

SOUTHERN AFRICA

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>EXECUTIVE SUMMARY</b> .....	iv
1. INTRODUCTION.....	1
1.1. TERMS OF REFERENCE .....	1
1.2. DELIVERABLES AND TIME-LINE .....	3
2. EVALUATION METHODOLOGY: CRITERIA AND CATEGORIES.....	4
2.1. EVALUATION CRITERIA.....	4
2.2. SOCIAL-ECOLOGICAL CATEGORIES INDICATING LEVEL OF INCLUSION OF SOCIAL-ECOLOGICAL ISSUES.....	10
2.3. AVAILABILITY OF DOCUMENTS TO BE EVALUATED .....	12
2.4. LIMITATIONS OF EVALUATION.....	15
3. EVALUATION RESULTS .....	17
3.1. LIMPOPO PROVINCE .....	23
3.2. MPUMALANGA PROVINCE.....	25
3.3. GAUTENG PROVINCE .....	28
4. SUMMARY CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS .....	29
4.1. TERMS OF REFERENCE FOR IDPs AND SDFs.....	35
5. ADDENDUM: EVALUATION RESULTS TABLES.....	41

## List of Figures

Figure 1. Map indicating the District and Local Municipalities of the Olifants Catchment (provided by the RESILIM/AWARD team).....	3
Figure 2. Graph indicating the level of inclusion of social-ecological information per municipality in the Limpopo Province.....	24
Figure 3. Graph indicating the level of inclusion of social-ecological information per municipality in the Limpopo Province.....	26

## List of Tables

Table 1. The municipalities (local and district) within the Olifants catchment .....	2
Table 2. The criteria that were used to evaluate and demonstrate the level of inclusion of important social-ecological issues, with a focus on environmental and biodiversity issues, in the key spatial and non-spatial, environmental and economic planning instruments of local government. ....	5
Table 3. Strategic biodiversity specific planning tools relevant to the Limpopo, Mpumalanga and Gauteng Provinces .....	10
Table 4. Descriptions of the A-F social-ecological categories that were used to indicate the level of inclusion of social ecological issues in key municipal planning documents .....	11
Table 5. Issues regarding document availability during the review process .....	12
Table 6. The following SDFs are potentially out-dated and pre-date a revised SDF). ....	14
Table 7. Criteria scores per municipality in the Limpopo Province .....	18
Table 8. Criteria scores per municipality in the Mpumalanga Province and the Gauteng Province ....	18
Table 9. Social-ecological scores, percentage and category achieved per municipality in the Limpopo Province. ....	23
Table 10. Social-ecological scores, percentage and category achieved per municipality in the Mpumalanga Province.....	26
Table 11. Social-ecological category achieved for the City of Tshwane in the Gauteng Province. ....	29
Table 12. Summary results for District Municipalities indicating social-ecological category percentage scores from highest to lowest .....	29
Table 13. Summary results for Local and Metropolitan Municipalities indicating social-ecological category percentage scores from highest to lowest .....	29
Table 14. Limpopo Province: Mopani District and Capricorn District- Allocated scores for each criterion per municipality with a brief summary motivation indicating level of social-ecological content. ....	41
Table 15. Limpopo Province: Greater Sekhukhune District, Capricorn District and Waterberg District - Allocated scores for each criterion per municipality with a brief summary motivation indicating level of social-ecological content.....	62
Table 16. Mpumalanga Province: Nkangala District - Allocated scores for each criterion per municipality with a brief summary motivation indicating level of social-ecological content.....	79
Table 17. Mpumalanga Province: Gert Sibande and Ehlanzeni Districts - Allocated scores for each criterion per municipality with a brief summary motivation indicating level of social-ecological content.....	95
Table 18. Gauteng Province: City of Tshwane Metro Municipality - Allocated scores for each criterion per municipality with a brief summary motivation indicating level of social-ecological content. ....	106

**Acronyms**

BR	Biosphere Reserve
CA	Conservation Area
CBA	Critical Biodiversity Area
C-Plan	Conservation Plan
CRDP	Comprehensive Rural Development Programme
DM	District Municipality
EMF	Environmental Management Framework
EMP	Environmental Management Plan
EPWP	Expanded Public Works Programme
ESA	Ecological Support Area
IDP	Integrated Development Plan
LED	Local Economic Development (Strategy)
LM	Local Municipality
LUM	Land Use Management Scheme
LUMS	Land Use Management Scheme
NEMA	National Environmental Management Act
NEMAQ	National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act
NEMBA	National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act
NEMA	National Environmental Management Waste Act
NEMPAA	National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act
NFEPA	National Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Area
NWA	National Environmental Management Act
PA	Protected Area
RESILIM	Resilience in the Limpopo Basin Program
SDF	Spatial Development Framework
SOER	State of Environment Report
TFCA	Trans-frontier Conservation Area

## EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

As part of the United States Agency for International Development (USAID) supported Resilim-O Project, the Association for Water and Rural Development (AWARD) was required to develop a status quo report on the social-ecological content of municipal spatial and development planning documents (e.g. Integrated Development Plans, Spatial Development Frameworks, Land Use Management Schemes and Local Economic Development Strategies) within the Olifants Catchment (Refer Section 1.1, Table 1, Figure 1).

This status quo report therefore indicates the degree to which municipal spatial and development planning documents have incorporated social-ecological issues, with an emphasis on climate change, biodiversity, environmental issues and ecosystem services.

An assessment methodology was developed which includes a total of 31 criteria, with sub-criteria, that were developed to assess the social-ecological content of the municipal planning documents (Section 2.1, Table 2). These criteria were used to evaluate and demonstrate the level of inclusion of important social-ecological issues, with a focus on environmental and biodiversity issues, in the key spatial and non-spatial, environmental and economic planning instruments of local government. The criteria therefore demonstrate 'how an acceptable social-ecological category is achieved' within municipal planning documents; and are identified by setting the basic requirements for a high degree of inclusion of social-ecological issues in municipal planning documents. The social-ecological category into which the municipality falls depends on the number of social-ecological issues or criteria that are fulfilled and are categorized as follows:

Category	%	Description
A	90-100%	Excellent. These municipalities should as a minimum, have indicated and cross-referenced the biodiversity priorities (e.g. Critical Biodiversity Areas and Ecological Support Areas etc.) in the non-biodiversity planning documents (SDF, IDP, LED), and capacity for environmental management is present in the municipal structures and funding. The range of environmental issues (e.g. water quality) and associated management measures (e.g. green drop ratings) would be in place. These municipalities would have the range of biodiversity specific planning documents, and would have fulfilled the majority of the criteria.
B	80 - <90%	Very good. As a minimum, biodiversity priorities (e.g. Critical Biodiversity Areas and Ecological Support Areas), including ecosystem service areas, such as wetlands and high water yielding areas, and a range of environmental issues and associated management measures, such as flooding and disaster risk mitigation, water quality, sustainable water abstraction, alien plant control and air pollution control, are included in the IDP and SDF. Several biodiversity specific documents are available.

Category	%	Description
C	60 - <80%	Good. As a minimum biodiversity is included through an environmental summary or environmental analysis in the IDP; and biodiversity data has been used in the development of the SDF as a measure for ensuring sustainable development. Environmental issues (e.g. water quality, water abstraction, air pollution) are included in the IDP with some management measures in place (e.g. green drop ratings, air pollution monitoring). A few biodiversity specific documents are available.
D	46 - <60%	Fair. Biodiversity does feature in most of the documents, and most importantly the IDP and SDF, but it does not necessarily form one of the cornerstones of sustainable development. At the upper end of the spectrum spatial biodiversity data is included, but not necessarily representing Critical Biodiversity Areas or systematic biodiversity plans. At the lowest end of the spectrum, the spatial biodiversity data is lacking or does not inform other sector plans. Some of the key environmental issues (e.g. water quality, water abstraction, air pollution) are included in the IDP, with some management measures in place (e.g. green drop ratings, air pollution monitoring, recycling). Limited biodiversity specific documents and appropriate environmental projects are indicated. Environmental management capacity is inadequate or absent.
E	21 - 45%	Poor. Biodiversity does feature in the IDP and/or SDF, but inclusion and integration is unsatisfactory or low and quality of the environmental data is not adequate. Limited biodiversity specific documents, if any.
F	0 - 20%	Extremely poor. None or only a few of the required planning documents have been developed, and the inclusion of biodiversity is absent or minimal. Environmental risks, projects and programmes are mostly absent in guiding sustainable development. Biodiversity specific documents are absent.

**Summary Results: District Municipalities indicating social-ecological category percentage scores from highest to lowest**

Municipality	Maximum Score	Allocated Total Score	Percentage %	Category		Province
Nkangala DM	59	35	59.3	D	FAIR	Mpumalanga
Mopani DM	61	35.5	58.2	D	FAIR	Limpopo
Waterberg DM	60	34.5	57.5	D	FAIR	Limpopo
Gert Sibande DM	59	33	55.9	D	FAIR	Mpumalanga
Capricorn DM	60	30.5	50.8	D	FAIR	Limpopo
Ehlanzeni DM	62	31.5	50.8	D	FAIR	Mpumalanga
Greater Sekhukhune DM	60	30.5	50.8	D	FAIR	Limpopo

**Summary results for Local and Metropolitan Municipalities indicating social-ecological category percentage scores from highest to lowest**

Municipality	Maximum Score	Allocated Total Score	Percentage	Category		Province
Polokwane LM	60	35.5	59.2	D	FAIR	Limpopo
Emakhazeni LM	61	35	57.4	D	FAIR	Mpumalanga
Bela-Bela	60	32.5	54.2	D	FAIR	Limpopo
Maruleng LM	61	33	54.1	D	FAIR	Limpopo
Steve Tshwete LM	61	31	50.8	D	FAIR	Mpumalanga
Ba-Phalaborwa LM	61	30.5	50.0	D	FAIR	Limpopo
Bushbuckridge LM	62	30	48.4	D	FAIR	Mpumalanga
Greater Tzaneen LM	60	29	48.3	D	FAIR	Limpopo
Victor Khanye LM	57	27.5	48.2	D	FAIR	Mpumalanga
Mookgophong	59	28	47.5	D	FAIR	Limpopo
Lepele Nhumpi LM	60	28	46.7	D	FAIR	Limpopo
Elias Motsoaledi LM	59	27	45.8	E	POOR	Limpopo
Makhuduthamaga LM	57	25.5	44.7	E	POOR	Limpopo
Emalahleni LM	59	26	44.1	E	POOR	Mpumalanga
City of Tshwane Metro	56	24.5	43.8	E	POOR	Gauteng
Ephriam Mogale LM	60	25.5	43.2	E	POOR	Limpopo
Fetakgomo LM	61	25.5	42.5	E	POOR	Limpopo
Govan Mbeki LM	58	24.5	42.2	E	POOR	Mpumalanga
Msukaligwa LM	58	25.25	41.4	E	POOR	Mpumalanga
Dr JS Moroka LM	59	23.5	39.8	E	POOR	Mpumalanga
Thembisile Hani LM	59	23	39	E	POOR	Mpumalanga
Thaba Chweu LM	60	22	36.7	E	POOR	Mpumalanga
Greater Tubatse LM	60	21.5	35.8	E	POOR	Limpopo

## 1. INTRODUCTION

As part of the United States Agency for International Development (USAID) supported Resilim-O Project, the Association for Water and Rural Development (AWARD) was required to develop a status quo report to manage and coordinate the provision of expert technical assistance, training, and grants. The overall aim is to reduce vulnerability through building improved trans-boundary governance and management of the Olifants Catchment.

Olifants RESILIM (Resilience in the Limpopo Basin Program) is preparing a catchment level report on municipal governance for the South African side of the Olifants Catchment consisting of the following components:

- A literature Review
- Creation of an institutional profile
- Producing relevant maps in support of the profiling process
- Institutional mapping of the relevant partners at the relevant governance levels
- Profiling of municipalities
- Synthesis of findings to find possible points of interest for further engagement

In order to support these activities a status quo report must be compiled which indicates the degree to which municipal spatial and development planning documents (e.g. Integrated Development Plans, Spatial Development Frameworks) have incorporated social-ecological issues, with an emphasis on climate change, biodiversity and ecosystem services. This report represents the status quo report.

### 1.1. TERMS OF REFERENCE

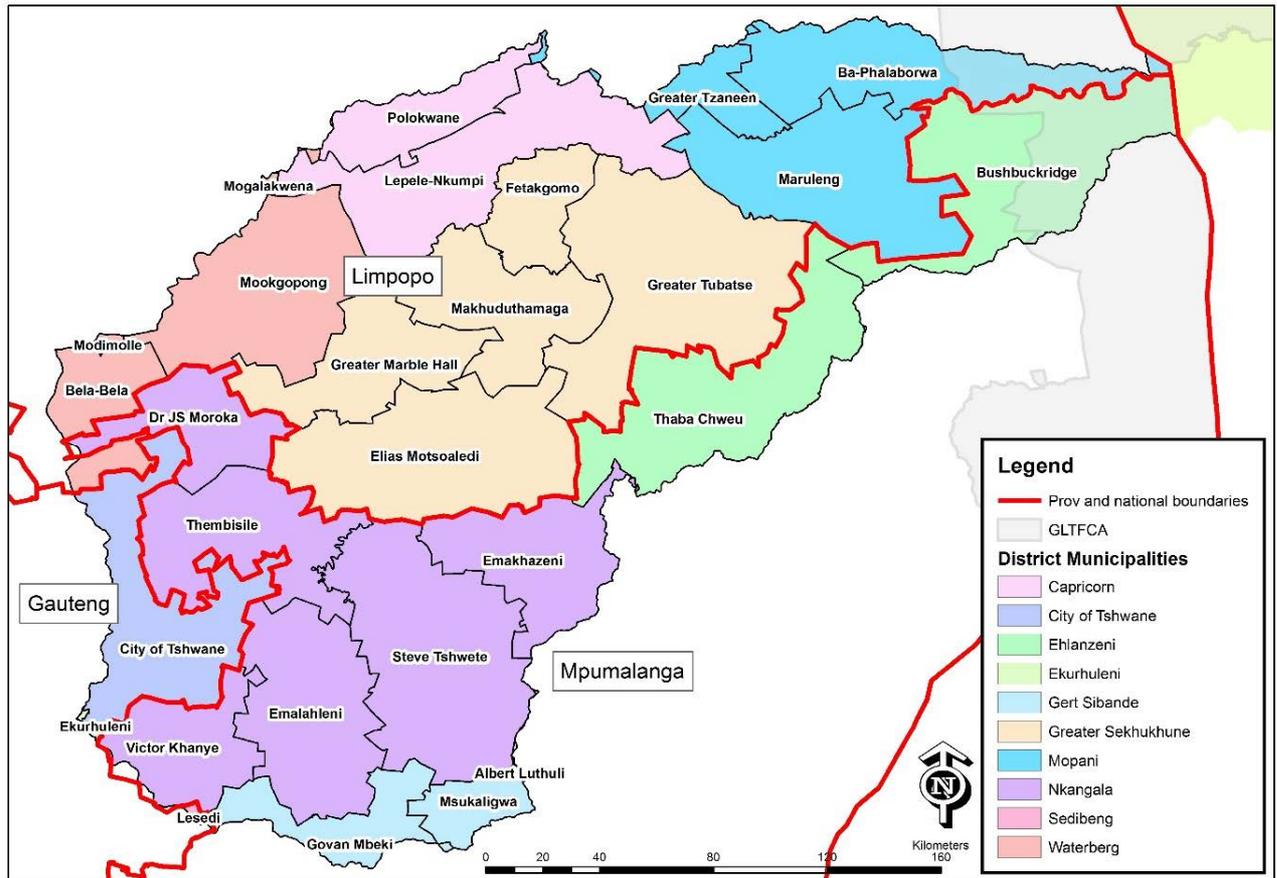
In order to determine the degree to which municipal spatial and development planning documents have incorporated social-ecological issues, the following Terms of Reference was provided by AWARD:

1. Develop a rapid evaluation methodology to examine the state of spatial and economic planning instruments (IDPs, SDFs, EMFs and other relevant municipal planning and guidance documents, such as LED) for all relevant municipalities (local and district) within the Olifants catchment (Refer to Table 1 and Figure 1 provided by the RESILIM team).
2. Evaluate the degree to which spatial and economic planning instruments (IDPs, SDFs, EMFs and other relevant municipal planning and guidance documents, such as LED) have included social-ecological issues in the documents supplied by the RESILIM team. Where documents are absent from the initial set collated by the RESILIM team, the RESILIM team must be notified. The RESILIM team will attempt to source these documents. Where documents 'Are not available' or 'Do not exist', then these would be noted as a gap in the synthesis.
3. Summarize the state of spatial, environmental and economic planning instruments (IDPs, SDFs, EMFs and other relevant municipal planning and guidance documents, such as LEDs or Land Use Management Plans) in terms of appropriate social-ecological issues inclusion into municipal planning processes in terms of the specific criteria evaluated.

**Table 1.** The municipalities (local and district) within the Olifants catchment

*Municipalities indicated in red were not be included as they only marginally overlap with the Olifants Catchment.*

PROVINCE						
GAUTENG		MPUMALANGA		LIMPOPO		
DM	LM	DM	LM	DM	LM	
	City of Tshwane Metro Municipality	Nkangala	Dr JS Moroka	Capricorn	Polokwane	
	<i>Ekurhuleni Metro Municipality (small area)</i>		Thembisile Hani			Lepele Nhumpi
	<i>Sedibeng</i>		Victor (Old=Delmas)	Khanye	Mopani	Greater Tzaneen
	<i>Lesedi (small area)</i>		Emalahleni			Ba-Phalaborwa
			Steve Tshwete			Maruleng
			Emakhazeni		Greater Sekhukhune	Fetakgomo
			Govan Mbeki			Greater Tubatse
			Msukaligwa			Makhuduthamaga
			<i>Albert Luthuli (small area)</i>			Ephriam (Old=Greater Hall)
			Ehlanzeni	Thaba Chweu		Elias Motsoaledi
		Bushbuckridge			Mookgophong	
				Waterberg	Bela-Bela	
					<i>Mogalakwena (small area)</i>	
					<i>Modimolle (small area)</i>	



**Figure 1.** Map indicating the District and Local Municipalities of the Olifants Catchment (provided by the RESILIM/AWARD team).

## 1.2. DELIVERABLES AND TIME-LINE

Four deliverables were indicated for the project. This report represents Deliverable 2 or Milestone 2 in the table text below. The following deliverables and time-lines were indicated for the project:

DELIVERABLE	TIME-LINE: SUBMISSION DATE
1. <b>Milestone 1a:</b> Develop a draft evaluation methodology for input and approval from the RESILIM Olifants team and key stakeholders. RESILIM Olifants team will consolidate any comments. <u>Product:</u> Initial outline of criteria and categories to be used to assess the environmental / biodiversity content of municipal documents.	15 November 2014
2. <b>Milestone 1b:</b> Test assessment methodology against the lower Olifants Catchment municipalities, namely Mopani District Municipality and the three local municipalities. <u>Product:</u> Initial draft evaluation report on spatial and non-spatial planning documents in Mopani District.	20 December 2014
3. <b>Milestone 2:</b> Initial draft evaluation report of spatial and non-spatial planning documents.	30 January 2015
4. <b>Milestone 3:</b> Final evaluation report.	28 February 2015

## **2. EVALUATION METHODOLOGY: CRITERIA AND CATEGORIES**

### **2.1. EVALUATION CRITERIA**

As part of deliverable one, an evaluation methodology had to be developed that included a list of criteria that would be used to assess the social-ecological content of the municipal planning documents in the Olifants Catchment. Table 2 below provides the evaluation criteria used for the municipal assessment.

An initial list of criteria was provided by the RESILIM team. A preliminary list of criteria was further developed based on the initial list, which was approved by the RESILIM team in November 2014. Subsequent to the preliminary list of criteria, several additional criteria were developed.

Due to the lack of availability of Comprehensive Rural Development Plans (CRDP) and the fact that CRDPs are national planning documents, this criterion was subsequently excluded from the assessment criteria.

A total of 31 criteria were used to evaluate and demonstrate the level of inclusion of important social-ecological issues, with a focus on environmental and biodiversity issues, in the key spatial and non-spatial, environmental and economic planning instruments of local and district municipalities.

The criteria are fundamental questions that demonstrate 'how an acceptable social-ecological category is achieved', which are identified by setting the fundamental requirements for an excellent social-ecological category. It is the 'environmental wish list'. In the municipal context, this is the integration of the most up to date systematic conservation plans (as provided on the SANBI BGIS website), the accompanying land use guidelines and ecosystem services issues, into Integrated Development Plans (IDP) and Spatial Development Frameworks (SDF), which should inform subsequent sector plans developed by the municipality, such as Local Economic Development Plans (LED); including Land Use Management Schemes (LUM). Therefore the integration of biodiversity and ecosystem services data across the various sectors should be demonstrated. In addition, is the inclusion of a range of other environmental information and social-ecological issues, that impact on social well-being e.g. waste, water and air pollution and associated management measures, which should be provided as part of the environmental component or chapter of the IDP and SDF.

The Integrated Development Plan (IDP) and the Spatial Development Framework (SDF), which should include a Land Use Management System (LUMS) or guidelines component, were the focus of the evaluation procedure. The other planning documents associated with the IDP and by default the SDF, were evaluated on the basis of integration or cross-referencing to the IDP and SDF spatial outcomes, land use management and environmental management issues.

**Table 2.** The criteria that were used to evaluate and demonstrate the level of inclusion of important social-ecological issues, with a focus on environmental and biodiversity issues, in the key spatial and non-spatial, environmental and economic planning instruments of local government.

CRITERIA	SCORE (Minimum - Maximum)
<p>1. Do the following key non-biodiversity specific planning instruments exist, namely: (1) IDP, (2) SDF, (3) Land Use Management Scheme (LUM), (4) LED, and (5) Annual Report?</p> <p>Indicate if the documents that exist could not be sourced by the RESILIM/AWARD team due to accessibility issues.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Land Use Management Schemes exist for Local Municipalities, not District Municipalities. For District Municipalities, a score of 1 is allocated for simplification purposes, unless it was clear that all LMs do not have LUM Schemes.</li> <li>• Town Planning Schemes that cover only towns and not the entire municipal area were allocated a score of 0.5.</li> <li>• All schemes appeared to be outdated and therefore the criterion 2 below is still allocated to the District.</li> </ul>	0 (None) - 5
<p>2. If yes, are these up to date?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Updated versions of IDPs were sourced from municipal websites, however there were several instances where available IDPs were dated 2013 – 2014 and are therefore outdated (Refer Addendum 1: Assessment Tables)..</li> </ul>	0 - 5
<p>3. Inclusion of -</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• (1) Summary environmental section / environmental analysis in non-biodiversity specific planning documents (IDP, SDF) (e.g. included in the IDP situation analysis which is comparable to demography, economy etc.). Score of 1 if in IDP and SDF.</li> <li>• (2) Summary land use management/biodiversity development guidelines (e.g. avoid wetlands, riparian areas, buffers, threatened ecosystems, requirement for EIAs etc.). This should be a clear sub-section or table referencing protection of these features or at minimum the provincial biodiversity plan land use guidelines table. Although an open space system or strategically identified sensitive environments usually includes important biodiversity features such as watercourse, wetlands or ridges that should be avoided, clear concise guidance in this regard should be indicated, especially as it is guiding non-biodiversity users. In addition, systematic biodiversity plans may not be easily interpreted from the map or the criteria tables. Furthermore, SDFs are done at a broad-scale and therefore such habitats will fall outside of the open space system. Linkage to the type of land uses permitted and management measures in these areas is also important.</li> <li>• (3) Environmental priorities (sensitive environments) and associated risks (or impacts e.g. pollution, erosion, informal housing etc.). The ‘risk’ criterion is linked to criteria 19 and 21.1 but is a yes or no response.</li> <li>• (4) Reference thereto in other / non-spatial documents (LED, IDP).</li> </ul> <p>For example: if it includes (1) – (4), a score of 4 is allocated. If, for example the LED is not available, the total score is still 4 as this will reflect the lack of these documents and linkages required. Should include reference to biodiversity e.g. sensitive environments, or CBA, EMF areas and Biosphere Reserves; and environmental concerns as a minimum.</p>	0 - 4
<p>4. Inclusion of -</p>	0 - 2

CRITERIA	SCORE (Minimum - Maximum)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• (1) Summary biodiversity map(s) in the biodiversity summary/environmental analysis of non-biodiversity specific planning documents (e.g. included in the IDP situation analysis which is comparable to graphs and figures relating to demography, economy etc.); and</li> <li>• (2) Reference to the documents that include this data (i.e. LED makes reference to the SDF/IDP or EMP containing this data).</li> </ul>	
<p>5. Does the LUM Scheme include conservation zones that would permit the protection of important biodiversity areas (other than through NEMPAA)? Ideally the zoning maps should have conservation use, rather than open space use that would include e.g. parks, sports fields. Or at minimum does the LUMS consider environmental protection (NEMA)?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If there is no LUM Scheme, a score of 0 is still allocated as it indicates that this key land use control tool is not in place that could protect biodiversity.</li> <li>• If the LUM Scheme was not sourced, this criterion is not included in the final score.</li> <li>• The criterion is not assessed for District Municipalities.</li> </ul>	0 - 1
<p>6. Inclusion of -</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• (1) Climate change as a key environmental issue; and</li> <li>• (2) Planning mitigation measures e.g. flood lines, alternative energy options, maintaining ecological corridors etc. The inclusion of recycling operations, alternative or renewable energy solutions (solar) and district air quality management plans should also be included.</li> </ul> <p>The Score of 2 only attained if proper spatial guidelines indicated in SDF (&amp; IDP) e.g. flood lines, buffers, high water yielding areas.</p>	0 - 2
<p>7. Inclusion of key biodiversity related legislation specific to the planning document, in particular the IDP and SDF.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For example: the requirement of the IDP to incorporate biodiversity (strategic environmental assessment of the SDF), NEMA sustainable development principles, NEMA and EIA requirements, National Water Act requirements (wastewater, water quality monitoring of sewage effluent, flood lines for township developments), NEMBA? Inclusion of key legislation to demonstrate awareness for compliance purposes. At minimum: NEMBA, NEMA, NWA.</li> </ul>	0 - 2
<p>8. Inclusion of environmental projects linked to the environmental issues identified in the situation analysis of the IDP e.g. alien clearing, water quality monitoring, Environmental Management Plan, recycling operations, alternative or renewable energy solutions (solar), air quality monitoring and district air quality management plans, water conservation. In some instances, recycling, alternative energy and water conservation is taking but these are not indicated in the projects listing. These programmes or projects were identified in other sections of the IDP (and LED in some cases).</p>	0 - 1
<p>9. Inclusion of –</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• (1) water quality and quantity management for sustainability, with</li> <li>• (2) linkages to projects in the IDP or other e.g. Water Quality Management Plan (Score 1 -2).</li> </ul> <p>The inclusion of green drop ratings should be included i.e. improving wastewater quality standards. Water Services Development Plans should ideally include environmental management issues e.g. effluent management, water conservation and demand (recycling, re-use, rainfall harvest).</p>	0 - 2

CRITERIA	SCORE (Minimum - Maximum)
10. Principles of environmental sustainability included in the documents, particularly the IDP and SDF (Land Use Management System). National and provincial policy should be articulated at local level, for example: strategic objective, vision or mission statement, Key Focus Area.	0 - 1
11. Inclusion of environmental management (or equivalent) as a Key Performance Area <sup>1</sup> in the IDP. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The municipality is responsible for developing Key Performance Indicators/Areas, not only the national indicators, to evaluate the IDP's performance in achieving (sustainable) development objectives.</li> </ul>	0 - 1
12. To what extent are biodiversity planning instruments incorporated into the spatial and non-spatial planning instruments, namely: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• (1) Letaba &amp; Olifants EMF 2009 and Waterberg EMF,</li> <li>• (2) Institutional mechanisms such as Trans-frontier Conservation Areas (TFCAs); and</li> <li>• (3) Biosphere Reserves (in municipalities where these are relevant e.g. Waterberg, Limpopo)</li> </ul> Specifically in terms of the IDP and SDF, the IDP should at least have reference to the SDF outcomes that are based on (or included) this data. If not relevant, the criterion will not be included in the total score. If a Local or District EMF has been undertaken a score of 1 is allocated.	0 - 3
13. Inclusion of formal Protected Areas and informal Conservation Areas into the (1) spatial and (2) economic planning instruments. Specifically in terms of the IDP and SDF, the IDP should at least have reference to the SDF outcomes that are based on (or included) this data.	0 - 2
14. Inclusion of the National Protected Areas Expansion Strategy Focus Areas.	0 - 1
15. Inclusion of spatial biodiversity priority areas e.g. Critical Biodiversity Areas & Ecological Support Areas (as identified in appropriate systematic biodiversity plans) as areas of high environmental sensitivity into the spatial planning instruments. This includes appropriate use of national (e.g. Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Areas; Protected Area expansion priorities) and provincial (Mpumalanga Biodiversity Conservation Plan v1/Mpumalanga Biodiversity Sector Plan, Limpopo Conservation Plan, and Gauteng C-Plan 3.3) priorities into planning. Specifically in terms of the IDP and SDF, the IDP should at least have reference to the SDF outcomes that are based on this data (linked to criteria 5 and 6, but depends on the biodiversity data used). If the SDFs pre-date the plans, the score will be allocated in terms of a reference in the IDP.	0 - 1
16. Inclusion of land use and land use management guidelines (as part of the Land Use Management System) in the SDF that are linked to the land use guidelines of the biodiversity priorities above. Specifically in terms of the SDF, the IDP should at least have reference to the SDF outcomes that are based on this data.	0 - 1
17. Inclusion of <u>appropriate</u> - <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• (1) Natural resource management issues (e.g. alien invasive species, water quality, water use); and</li> <li>• (2) Programmes or projects into the non-spatial municipal planning instruments (e.g. IDP, LED).</li> </ul> Criterion 16.1 is linked to criterion 3.4 but relates to appropriate inclusion rather than only listing what is included.	0 - 2
18. Appropriate inclusion of ecosystem services (e.g. high water yield or strategic water source areas, floodplains and wetlands, buffers) into spatial and economic planning instruments. If the available systematic conservation plan is included in the SDF and referenced in the IDP, this would	0 - 1

<sup>1</sup> Local Government: Municipal Performance Regulations R805 (2006) prescribes five Key Performance Areas.

CRITERIA	SCORE (Minimum - Maximum)
achieve a score of 1. In instances where the word and concept of ecosystem services (or equivalent) is utilized, coupled with inclusion of an environmental component in the IDP and SDF, which seeks to protect aquatic resources, a score of 0.5 is allocated.	
19. What are the key - <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• (1) Environmental drivers and (2) Social drivers, which are included in the spatial and non-spatial planning instruments?</li> <li>• Criterion 19.1 is linked to criterion 3.4 and 18.1 but only lists environmental issues within the documents (SDF, IDP, LED). A list will be provided in the results tables, and if either is present it gets a score.</li> </ul>	0 - 2
20. Inclusion of Environmental Impact Assessment or other legislation/regulations (National Water Act & pollution etc.) for proposed infrastructure projects or other e.g. land fill sites, sewage and water quality monitoring etc. (this can be evaluated in terms of items in the IDP with allocated budget).	0 - 1
21. Appropriate inclusion of - <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• (1) areas required to manage disaster risk (e.g. floodplains, steep slopes and erodible soils) (spatial and other means of inclusion in planning processes); and</li> <li>• (2) an indication/understanding that this relates to climate change, where applicable. For example: strategic identification of flood prone areas in the SDF.</li> </ul>	0 – 2
22. To what extent are the different spatial planning instruments, as well as development instruments, integrated (e.g. are components of the SDF present in the IDP and LED)? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Linked to criterion 6 and 7. For example: if there is no cross-referencing in the LED to the IDP or SDF, integration is zero. If all documents are cross-referenced, then integration is good.</li> </ul>	0 = Not 1 = Low (poor) 2 = Moderate 3 = High (good)
23. Where district and local municipalities have overlapping planning instruments do these appear to be aligned in terms of - <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• (1) Environmental issues and</li> <li>• (2) Management</li> </ul> In other words, are the issues at district level integrated at the local level and visa-versa.	0 - 2
24. Are monitoring and evaluation process built into the planning instrument? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• As a minimum this should be indicated in the IDP, which by default should include the monitoring and evaluation of the sector plans (LED) and related projects; and in the SDF.</li> </ul>	0 - 1
25. Do the planning instruments have realistic links to current capacity to implement (i.e. evidence of financial capacity)? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This should be evaluated in terms of items (projects) in the IDP with allocated budget i.e. are there environmental / biodiversity related projects with a budget identified in the IDP.</li> </ul>	0 - 1
26. Linked to the above, is there evidence of staff capacity to identify and implement environmental projects i.e. an environmental manager and/or unit. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The IDP, in some instances, gives an indication of key staff / directorates e.g. Environmental Manager/Directorate. Lack of environmental unit/manager indicates no or limited internal</li> </ul>	0 - 1

CRITERIA	SCORE (Minimum - Maximum)
<p>capacity to implement on a day to day basis. Where measures are indicated to improve staff capacity, for example training, or environmental forums exist, a score of 0.5 has been allocated.</p>	
<p>27. What are the key institutional context/issues raised in the spatial and non-spatial instruments? The key issues will be listed, and if environmental / biodiversity / climate change institutional issues are raised as it relates to socio-economic well-being, score is 1.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For example: lack of cooperation with provincial authority to assist with climate change issues. In July 2011: Limpopo and Gauteng had a draft Climate Change Response Strategy in place, whereas Mpumalanga had draft discussion document on climate change (to be developed into a strategy). If the municipality is aware of the need to employ dedicated staff a score of 1 is allocated.</li> </ul>	0 - 1
<p>28. Evidence of adequate stakeholder engagement i.e. has the IDP/SDF process included the key environmental authorities organizations in the stakeholder engagement phase?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Although it is acknowledged that IDP/SDF documents do not provide a list of these stakeholders, this should ideally be indicated to demonstrate cooperate governance to achieve sustainable development (biodiversity protection). Evidence of inclusion of certain organizations or sectors, such as SANParks and Protected Areas or community projects might provide some evidence, including Working for Water Programmes (Department of Water Affairs), such as alien clearing, Environmental Affairs programmes. Inter-Governmental Relations, IDP or other cooperative governance structures may also indicate sector inclusion or alternatively issues raised in the IDP relating to lack of inclusion/inter-governmental relations may indicate inadequate inclusion.</li> </ul>	0 - 1
<p>29. Do the following stand-alone <b>biodiversity specific</b> documents exist for the municipality <b>or group of municipalities</b>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Biodiversity sector plan (BSP) or similar (systematic biodiversity plan)</li> <li>(2) Environmental Management Framework</li> <li>(3) Environmental Management Plan</li> <li>(4) State of Environment Reports</li> <li>(5) Strategic Environmental Assessment</li> <li>(6) Plans / budget to compile the above biodiversity specific tools (Score 0-6).</li> </ul> <p>Although municipal biodiversity sector plans do not exist, only the provincial conservation plans/BSP, this criterion should be utilized to provide a baseline given that the national objective is to integrate systematic plans/biodiversity sector plans into municipal planning (and to develop bioregional plans).</p>	0 - 6
<p>30. If yes, are these up to date? <b>(Excludes point 29.6 above)</b>.</p>	0 - 5
<p>31. Other environmental management related tools that exist or are planned or budgeted for e.g. water quality monitoring plan, climate change strategy, environmental management policy.</p>	0 - 1
<p><b>MAXIMUM SCORE</b></p>	<b>62</b>
<p><i>Excluding score for Greater Limpopo TFCA: All municipalities apart from TFCA located in the Ba-Phalaborwa LM &amp; Bushbuckridge LM</i></p>	<b>61</b>
<p><i>Excluding score for Biosphere Reserves</i></p>	<b>60</b>
<p><i>Other criteria (scores) were excluded where relevant</i></p>	

The maximum score depends on the presence of the following environmental planning tools, namely the Limpopo Trans-frontier Conservation Area (TFCA), the Olifants and Letaba Environmental

Management Framework, the Kruger to Canyon Biosphere Reserve, the National Protected Areas Expansion Strategy (NPAES) focus areas and formally Protected Areas. The date of, in particular SDFs, will depend on the relevance of these management tools, as in some instances the SDFs pre-date existing tools (Refer Table 5). Several strategic biodiversity specific planning tools are relevant to the three provinces under review, which are indicated in Table 3 below.

**Table 3.** Strategic biodiversity specific planning tools relevant to the Limpopo, Mpumalanga and Gauteng Provinces

Biodiversity related spatial plans –	Limpopo	Mpumalanga	Gauteng
<b>Systematic Conservation Plan: Critical Biodiversity Areas (CBA) Map</b>	1. Limpopo CBA Map – Limpopo Conservation Plan Version 2 (2013). 2. Limpopo Conservation Plan Version 1 (2011)	1. Mpumalanga CBA Map (2014) 2. Mpumalanga Biodiversity Conservation Plan Map (2006): indicates irreplaceable sites, Highly Significant, Important & Necessary.	1. Gauteng C-Plan (Versions 2001, 2005, 2007, 2011).
<b>Biodiversity Sector Plans (BSP)</b>	No BSP	Mpumalanga Biodiversity Sector Plan 2014	No BSP
<b>Bioregional Plans</b>	In development phase: Waterberg DM	No bioregional plan.	No bioregional plan. (Bioregional Plans being developed for West Rand DM and Ekurhuleni DM)
<b>Environmental Management Framework (EMF)</b>	Waterberg District EMF 2010, Olifants and Letaba EMF 2009	Olifants and Letaba EMF 2009	Olifants and Letaba EMF 2009 - Eastern portion of the City of Tshwane
<b>Waterberg Biosphere Reserve 2011</b>	Waterberg DM, Bela-Bela LM, Mookgophong LM	Not Applicable.	Not Applicable.
<b>Kruger to Canyon Biosphere Reserve</b>	Capricorn DM, Mopani DM, Fetakgomo LM, Greater Tubatse LM	Not Applicable.	Not Applicable.
<b>Greater Limpopo Trans-Frontier Park (TFCA)</b>	Mopani DM, Ba-Phalaborwa LM	Ehlanzeni DM, Bushbuckridge LM	Not Applicable.

## 2.2. SOCIAL-ECOLOGICAL CATEGORIES INDICATING LEVEL OF INCLUSION OF SOCIAL-ECOLOGICAL ISSUES

The social-ecological category into which the municipal planning documents fall depends on the level of inclusion of social ecological issues and therefore the number of criteria that are fulfilled in the key planning documents, as indicated in Table 2 above (Section 2.1). The categories range from excellent (category A) to very poor (category F). Refer to Table 4 below for an explanation of the categories.

Note that the category definitions were further developed during the review process based on the findings.

**Table 4.** Descriptions of the A-F social-ecological categories that were used to indicate the level of inclusion of social ecological issues in key municipal planning documents

Category	%	Description
A	90-100%	Excellent. These municipalities should as a minimum, have indicated and cross-referenced the biodiversity priorities (e.g. Critical Biodiversity Areas and Ecological Support Areas etc.) in the non-biodiversity planning documents (SDF, IDP, LED), and capacity for environmental management is present in the municipal structures and funding. The range of environmental issues (e.g. water quality) and associated management measures (e.g. green drop ratings) would be in place. These municipalities would have the range of biodiversity specific planning documents, and would have fulfilled the majority of the criteria.
B	80 - <90%	Very good. As a minimum, biodiversity priorities (e.g. Critical Biodiversity Areas and Ecological Support Areas), including ecosystem service areas, such as wetlands and high water yielding areas, and a range of environmental issues and associated management measures, such as flooding and disaster risk mitigation, water quality, sustainable water abstraction, alien plant control and air pollution control, are included in the IDP and SDF. Several biodiversity specific documents are available.
C	60 - <80%	Good. As a minimum biodiversity is included through an environmental summary or environmental analysis in the IDP; and biodiversity data has been used in the development of the SDF as a measure for ensuring sustainable development. Environmental issues (e.g. water quality, water abstraction, air pollution) are included in the IDP with some management measures in place (e.g. green drop ratings, air pollution monitoring). A few biodiversity specific documents are available.
D	46 - <60%	Fair. Biodiversity does feature in most of the documents, and most importantly the IDP and SDF, but it does not necessarily form one of the cornerstones of sustainable development. At the upper end of the spectrum spatial biodiversity data is included, but not necessarily representing Critical Biodiversity Areas or systematic biodiversity plans. At the lowest end of the spectrum, the spatial biodiversity data is lacking or does not inform other sector plans. Some of the key environmental issues (e.g. water quality, water abstraction, air pollution) are included in the IDP, with some management measures in place (e.g. green drop ratings, air pollution monitoring, recycling). Limited biodiversity specific

Category	%	Description
		documents and appropriate environmental projects are indicated. Environmental management capacity is inadequate or absent.
E	21 - 45%	Poor. Biodiversity does feature in the IDP and/or SDF, but inclusion and integration is unsatisfactory or low and quality of the environmental data is not adequate. Limited biodiversity specific documents, if any.
F	0 - 20%	Extremely poor. None or only a few of the required planning documents have been developed, and the inclusion of biodiversity is absent or minimal. Environmental risks, projects and programmes are mostly absent in guiding sustainable development. Biodiversity specific documents are absent.

### 2.3. AVAILABILITY OF DOCUMENTS TO BE EVALUATED

According to the Terms of Reference (Section 1.1), where documents are absent from the initial set collated by the RESILIM team, the RESILIM team must be notified in order to the RESILIM team to attempt to source these documents. Where documents exist, but are inaccessible and could not be sourced, or if the documents do not exist as stand-alone reports, then these would be noted as a gap in the synthesis.

Table 5 below presents the issues raised regarding document availability during the review process; with responses and resolutions taken. According to the final collated documents, four SDFs could not be sourced, and Chapters 5 of the Mopani DM SDF could not be sourced. The latter did not hamper the review process. Although the review process focused largely on the IDP and SDF documents, and the degree of cross-referencing to the LED and Land Use Management Schemes, 13 LED reports and 12 Land Use Management Schemes could not be sourced.

**Table 5.** Issues regarding document availability during the review process

Document Availability Issues	Resolution / Response
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It is presumed that all documents indicated on the RESILIM excel spread-sheet as 'N' do not exist as stand-alone documents.</li> </ul>	Yes.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In some instances the collated IDP documents were out-dated.</li> </ul>	IDPs were downloaded from municipal websites. Some of the IDPs were out-dated (2013 – 2014), despite being more current than the collated documents.

Document Availability Issues	Resolution / Response
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Several SDFs, LEDs and LUM Schemes on the RESILIM excel spread were indicated as 'Y (In IDP)' meaning that the IDP contains a sub-section on the LED or SDF sector plans, and LUM Scheme, but that these documents were not sourced. The lack of an SDF document is of particular concern given the spatial basis of the SDF, and the resultant inability to adequately assess the municipality in the absence of this key planning document. Furthermore, accessing the land use management scheme maps would also be ideal in this regard, although it is acknowledged that these are generally more difficult to access.</li> </ul>	<p>The RESILIM team sourced SDFs via the Municipalities and the Provincial Department of Co-operative Governance, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs (CoGHSTA). The following SDFs could not be sourced:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Capricorn DM (Limpopo Province)</li> <li>2. Greater Sekhukhune DM (Limpopo Province)</li> <li>3. Ehlanzeni DM (Mpumalanga Province)</li> <li>4. Chapter 5 of the Mopani DM (Limpopo Province) – lack thereof did not hamper the review process.</li> </ol> <p>The following LEDs could not be sourced due to availability issues:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Greater Tzaneen LM</li> <li>2. Polokwane LM</li> <li>3. Greater Sekhukhune DM</li> <li>4. Makhuduthamaga LM</li> <li>5. Waterberg DM</li> <li>6. Mookgophong LM</li> <li>7. Nkangala DM</li> <li>8. Emakhazeni LM</li> <li>9. Emalahleni LM</li> <li>10. Thembisile Hani LM</li> <li>11. Gert Sibande DM</li> <li>12. Msukaligwa LM</li> <li>13. Thaba Chweu LM</li> </ol> <p>The assessment however, focused on the IDPs and SDFs, and references made to the LED in these documents.</p> <p>The following LUM Schemes could not be sourced due to availability issues:</p>

Document Availability Issues	Resolution / Response
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ba-Phalaborwa LM</li> <li>2. Lepele Nhumpi LM</li> <li>3. Elias Motsoaledi LM</li> <li>4. Fetakgomo LM</li> <li>5. Makhuduthamaga LM</li> <li>6. Mookgophong LM</li> <li>7. Dr JS Moroka LM</li> <li>8. Victor Khanye LM</li> <li>9. Gert Sibande DM</li> <li>10. Msukaligwa LM</li> <li>11. The zoning table of the Polokwane scheme was absent from the sourced scheme.</li> </ol> <p>The assessment however, focused on the IDP and SDF, and references made to the LUM Scheme in these documents, but included criterion 5 which required the identification of a conservation zone.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Numerous Comprehensive Rural Development Plan (CRDP) documents were not available.</li> </ul>	<p>This criterion was subsequently excluded from the assessment as the CRDP is a national planning document.</p>

Based on the updated collation of SDFs, seven SDFs are *potentially* out-dated in that an updated document might exist (Refer Table 6). Alternatively, the SDFs have not been revised. Some municipal planners have suggested that some municipalities, e.g. Ephraim Mogale, delayed revisions in anticipation of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (16 of 2013). In this event, the SDFs should have been revised given that the Act was promulgated on 5 August 2013.

**Table 6.** The following SDFs are potentially out-dated and pre-date a revised SDF).

MUNICIPALITY	DATE OF SDFs SOURCED
<b>LIMPOPO PROVINCE</b>	
1. Greater Tzaneen LM	May 2009. An updated version may be available (due to required 5 year review cycle).
2. Fetakgomo LM	2007. However, the IDP states: The reviewed SDF (2012/13 Financial Year).

MUNICIPALITY	DATE OF SDFs SOURCED
3. Greater Tubatse LM	November 2007. An updated version may be available (due to required 5 year review cycle).
4. Elias Motsoaledi LM	2007. An updated version may be available (due to required 5 year review cycle).
5. Mookgophong LM	2009. However, the IDP states: Data Source, SDF 2012/2013. 5 year review cycle therefore should have been reviewed in 2014. Waterberg DM indicates 2014 SDF.
6. Bela-Bela LM	2006. However, the WDM SDF states: The Bela-Bela SDF is dated July 2011. IDP states: The 2011 SDF has been completed and approved by Council in May 2012.
<b>MPUMALANGA PROVINCE</b>	
7. Gert Sibande DM	2009. However, the IDP 2013/14 states: The SDF is also going to be reviewed this financial year. Annual Report lists SDF 2014.
8. Govan Mbeki LM	2006. However, IDP 2015/16 indicates SDF 2014.

## 2.4. LIMITATIONS OF EVALUATION

The following limitations of the evaluation process should be taken into account:

- The evaluation focused largely on the IDP and SDF documents. These are the key development planning documents. The SDF is the spatial component of the IDP, whereas the IDP should integrate all sector plans e.g. LED, EMP etc. Therefore the IDP and SDF should, by default, integrate the various sector plans, while the SDF guides the sectors spatially through the biodiversity and socio-economic analyses. However, not consulting the various environmental management tools compiled, such as EMP, EMF, SOER, or other tools that should incorporate socio-ecological issues e.g. Land Use Management Policy (protection of biodiversity), Disaster Management Plan (flood prone areas), Land Use Scheme (conservation zones), Climate Change Strategy, does not allow for an adequate assessment of the level of socio-ecological issues in municipal planning (note that in a few instances some of these documents were sourced). Meaning that knowledge of whether these documents provide good social-ecological data that is not included in the IDP or SDF cannot be ascertained. The assessment is therefore essentially based on the level of integration into the IDP and SDF documents, which should be taking place but is not in all instances. For example, the City of Tshwane Municipality regional maps, referred to as Open Space and Environmental Sensitivity plan have incorporated the Gauteng Department of Agriculture and Rural Development (GDARD) conservation plan's Irreplaceable Areas, Important Areas and Ecological Support Areas, yet the IDP and SDF make no reference to the conservation plan and does not include an environmental analysis component. In other words, environmental management may be relatively good, but it is not adequately reflected in the IDP and SDF.
- A number of IDPs are out-dated (2013 - 2014), and a few IDPs predate the latest SDF. Therefore integration (cross referencing) may not be adequately scored.

- A few SDFs could not be sourced despite liaising with municipalities and the spatial planners at the Provincial Department of Co-operative Governance, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs (CoGHSTA) (Table 4).
- A number of SDFs are potentially out-dated, meaning there may be instances where SDF revisions have taken place (Table 5). However, the SDFs were sourced from the municipalities and the spatial planners at the Provincial Department of Co-operative Governance, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs (CoGHSTA). Consequently, it is unlikely that the SDFs are out-dated and that the various IDP and SDF statements, as referenced in Table 5, are incorrect.
- A number of SDFs did not include the referenced maps, namely: Greater Tzaneen LM, Maruleng LM, Ephriam Mogale LM, Elias Motsoaledi LM, Fetakgomo LM, Gert Sibande DM, Bushbuckridge LM (Refer Addendum Tables 14 to 18). A few sample maps for the Mopani DM were sourced, which assisted the review.
- In some instances, where stand-alone LEDs and LUM Schemes were not sourced, the date of the document could not be determined (Criteria 2).
- Documents were scanned and key terms or words were used to identify inclusion of the criteria in the various documents. Many of the criteria are not neatly 'packaged' within a dedicated section of the document, and therefore a 'word' or 'phrase' search had to be conducted.
- The exclusion or very limited inclusion of some criteria does not necessarily indicate that the municipality is unaware of the requirement or issue e.g. EIA requirement of NEMA, National Water Act waste water regulations.
- The inclusion of some criteria does not necessarily indicate that its inclusion is adequately integrated into the municipal planning processes or that it is effective. Example 1: Criterion 8 - Environmental projects with funding might be indicated but these projects are not appropriate for a satisfactory level of environmental management e.g. planting of trees and urban greening, which often falls within the Community Services: Parks and Recreation department. Example 2: Criterion 24 – Monitoring and Evaluation: The municipalities are required to develop a Performance Management System and Service Delivery Budget and Implementation Plan, but this may not be effective in terms of environmental content review. If the institutional analysis or swot analysis (or other) indicates a lack of monitoring this can be indicated and therefore assessed to a degree. Furthermore, monitoring and evaluation has to be undertaken as part of the IDP process to ensure attainment of sector and municipal specific Key Performance Indicators, to compare achievements with strategic, priorities of the PGDS and IDPs, to evaluate the relevance and impact of new information, and to evaluate the impact of inter- governmental and municipal budgets (Ehlanzeni DM, 2015).
- Lack of knowledge regarding the locality of national programmes and outcomes that apply to a particular municipality impacts negatively on the review process: Criterion 17. For example; Nkangala DM indicates national outcome 10 'Protection and enhancement of environmental assets and natural resources', with 'Key spending programmes', e.g. wetland rehabilitation, deforestation to <5% of woodlands and biodiversity and conservation (increase land under conservation from 6% to 9%).The NPAES should apply to the latter. In other words, are these programmes actually taking place within a particular municipality?

- The Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) projects include alien clearing, road construction, bulk supply line upgrades and sewer reticulation projects. The type of IDP EPWP project is not indicated in the IDP, and therefore the project type cannot be determined. It could be assumed that, if EPWP falls under infrastructure, it would not be an environmental project (e.g. alien clearing), whereas EPWP projects that fall under community and/or environmental services, cannot be determined unless the type of EPWP is indicated e.g. Gert Sibande DM: Phezkomkhono has been registered on the EPWP MIS System as a Social and Environmental Sector project yet the projects appear to be infrastructure related.
- Municipalities are required to develop Integrated Waste Management Plans, in terms of the National Environmental Management: Waste Act, which requires that recycling is implemented. In many instances recycling projects were not indicated in the IDP projects list, but were indicated in the waste management section. Lack of inclusion in the IDP may not necessarily mean that the municipality is not implementing recycling.
- Municipalities are required to develop Water Services Development Plans or Water Sector Plans, which require water conservation and demand. Water conservation was deemed as an environmental 'project' if identified in the IDP, as it should implement measures to conserve water e.g. leakages, rainfall harvesting, recycling and re-use. Lack of inclusion in the IDP may not necessarily mean that the municipality is not implementing water conservation measures.
- This was a rapid review of the environmental data used and the level of its inclusion into IDP and SDF documents.

### **3. EVALUATION RESULTS**

This section presents the evaluation results for all the municipalities within the Olifants Catchment.

The allocated scores for each criterion per municipality are provided in Table 6 to Table 8 below per province.

The summary motivations per criterion indicating level of social-ecological content is provided in Addendum 1 per municipality per province. The motivations constitute information copied from the municipal planning documents.

Section 3.1 to 3.3 presents a summary of the results per municipality per province based on the allocated scores and motivations.

**Table 7.** Criteria scores per municipality in the Limpopo Province

NA = Not Applicable.

No	Max Score	Limpopo Province	Mopani DM	Greater Tzaneen LM	Ba-Phalaborwa LM	Maruleng LM	Capricorn DM	Polokwane LM	Lepele Nhumpi LM	Greater Sekhukhune DM	Ephriam Mogale LM (Old=Greater Marble Hall)	Elias Motsoaledi LM	Fetakgomo LM	Greater Tubatse LM	Makhuduthamaga LM	Waterberg DM	Mookgophong	Bela-Bela
1.1	1	IDP (Score 0-1)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
1.2	1	LEDs (Score 0-1)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
1.3	1	SDF (Score 0-1)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
1.4	1	LUM Scheme (Score 0-1)	1	1	1	1	1	0.5	1	1	0.5	1	1	0.5	1	1	1	1
1.5	1	Annual Report	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
1.6		Documents exist but not sourced	Chapters 5 of SDF.	LED; LUMS.	LUMS	NA	SDF	LED, Table of Zones or maps of LUMS	LUMS	LED; SDF	NA	LUMS	LUMS	NA	LED; LUMS	LED.	LED, LUMS	NA
2.1	1	IDP up to date	0.5	0.5	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0.5	1	1	1	1	1
2.2	1	LEDs up to date	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
2.3	1	SDF up to date	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	1
2.4	1	LUM up to date	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0
2.5	1	Annual Report up to date	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	0
3.1	1	Summary biodiversity section or environmental analysis (Score 0-1)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0.5	1	0.5	1	1	1
3.2	1	Does the SDF (& IDP) contain land use/development guidelines e.g. avoid wetlands or sensitive areas. (Score 0-1)	0.5	1	1	0.5	0	1	0.5	0	0	0.5	0.5	0	0	0.5	0	0.5
3.3	1	Cross referencing to environmental analysis/environmental concerns/biodiversity data & land use guidelines (Score 0-1)	1	0.5	1	0.5	0.5	1	1	0.5	1	1	1	0.5	1	0.5	1	0.5
3.4	1	Includes environmental priorities (e.g. CBA, environmental sensitive areas) & risks (Score 0-1)	1	1	1	1	0.5	1	1	1	1	1	1	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	1
4	1	Summary biodiversity maps (Score 0 -1). If maps are in IDP & SDF, Score = 1.	0.5	0.5	0	0.5	0.5	0.5	1	1	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	1
5	1	Does the LUM Scheme include a conservation zone or at minimum consider environmental protection (Score 0-1)			0.5	0.5					0							0
6	2	Climate change & mitigation measures (Score 0-2). The Score of 2 only attained if proper spatial guidelines indicated in SDF (& IDP) e.g. floodlines, buffers, high water yielding areas.	1.5	1	1.5	1	1.5	1.5	1	0.5	1	1	0.5	0	1	1.5	1.5	0.5
7	2	Key biodiversity legislation to demonstrate awareness for compliance (Score 0-2)	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	1	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	1.5	0	0.5	1	0.5	1
8	1	Environmental projects (Score 0 - 1)	1	0.5	0.5	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
9	2	Water quality and quantity with linkage to IDP projects (Score 0-2)	1.5	1.5	0.5	1	1.5	0	0	0.5	0	0.5	0	0.5	0.5	1.5	0.5	1.5
10	1	Environmental sustainability (Score 0 - 1)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
11	1	Environmental Management as a Key Performance Area (KPA) (Score 0 - 1)	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
12	3	Inclusion of EMF, biosphere reserve (& TFCA for Ba-Phalaborwa LM & Bushbuckridge LM with maximum score of 3) (Score 0-1; 0-2 or 0-3)	2	0.5	1.5	1	0	1	0	0	0.5		0	0	0	2	1	1

No	Max Score	Limpopo Province	Mopani DM	Greater Tzaneen LM	Ba-Phalaborwa LM	Maruleng LM	Capricorn DM	Polokwane LM	Lepele Nhumpi LM	Greater Sekhukhune DM	Ephriam Mogale LM (Old=Greater Marble Hall)	Elias Motsoaledi LM	Fetakgomo LM	Greater Tubatse LM	Makhuduthamaga LM	Waterberg DM	Mookgophong	Bela-Bela
13	1	Inclusion of Protected Areas and Conservation areas (at minimum the SDF map should include these areas, while the IDP summary biodiversity map should include these areas). (Score 0-1)	1	0.5	1	1	1	1	0.5	1	0.5	0.5	1	0.5		1	1	0.5
14	1	Inclusion of National Protected Areas Expansion Strategy Focus Areas	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	0
15	1	Inclusion of spatial biodiversity priority areas - CBA, ESA, NFEPA, systematic biodiversity plans based. (Score 0-1)	0.5	0	0	0.5	0	0	0	0.5	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
16	1	Inclusion of land use / development guidelines specific to CBA, ESA, NFEPA, systematic plans (Score 0-1)	0.5	0	0	0.5	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
17	2	Inclusion of appropriate natural resource management issues in IDP, LED, SDF; and environmental programmes (Score 0 - 2)	2	1	1.5	1	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1	1	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5
18	1	Inclusion of ecosystem services (Score 0-1)	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0	0.5	0	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0	0	0.5	0.5	0.5
19.1	1	Key environmental drivers (Score 0-1)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0.5	1	1	0	1	1	1	1
19.2	1	Key social drivers (Score 0-1)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
20	1	EIA and other regulations (Score 0-1)	1	1	0.5	0.5	1	1	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0	0	0.5	0.5	1
21	2	Manage disaster risk (Score 0-2) For a Score 2 to be allocated there should be strategic identification of flood prone areas in SDF (on a map), as a minimum.	1.5	1	1	1	1	1.5	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1.5	1.5	1.5
22	3	Extent of integration / cross-referencing (Score 0 - 3)	2	2	1	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	1	2	2	1	1	2
23	2	Alignment of overlapping municipalities - Environmental issues and management (Score 0 -2)	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1	0.5	0.5	1	0	0.5	1.5	1.5	1.5
24	1	Monitoring & evaluation (Score 0-1)	0.5	1	0.5	1	0.5	0.5	1	1	0.5	0.5	0.5	1	0.5	1	0.5	1
25	1	Evidence of financial capacity (Score 0-1)	1	0	0.5	0.5	1	0.5	0.5	1	1	1	0.5	1	1	0.5	0.5	0.5
26	1	Evidence of environmental staff capacity (Score 0-1)	0	0	0	0	1	0	0.5	0	0	0.5	0	1	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5
27	1	Key institutional issues (Score 0-1). A score of 1 is allocated if institutional issues recognize environmental element/climate change.	1	0.5	1	0.5	1	0.5	0.5	1	1	0.5	0.5	0.5	1	0.5	0.5	0.5
28	1	Adequate stakeholder engagement (LEDET, SANParks, Working for Water) (Score 0-1)	0.5	0.5	0.5	1	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5
29		Municipal biodiversity specific documents																
29.1	1	Municipal BSP / Cons Plan (Score 0-1). Provide references to provincial biodiversity plans & incorporation into final desired spatial outcome	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
29.2	1	EMF (Score 0-1)	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0
29.3	1	EMP (Score 0-1)	0	1	0	0	0.5	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	0	1
29.4	1	SoER (Score 0-1)	0		1	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
29.5	1	SEA (Score 0-1)	0	0.5	0.5	0.5	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
29.6	1	Plans/budget to implement above biodiversity specific tools or update if existing (Score 0-1)	1	0.5	1	0.5	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0.5	0

No	Max Score	Limpopo Province	Mopani DM	Greater Tzaneen LM	Ba-Phalaborwa LM	Maruleng LM	Capricorn DM	Polokwane LM	Lepele Nhumpi LM	Greater Sekhukhune DM	Ephriam Mogale LM (Old=Greater Marble Hall)	Elias Motsoaledi LM	Fetakgomo LM	Greater Tubatse LM	Makhuduthamaga LM	Waterberg DM	Mookgophong	Bela-Bela
30.1	1	BSP / Cons Plan - current	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
30.2	1	EMF - current	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
30.3	1	EMP - current	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
30.4	1	SoER - current	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
30.5	1	SEA - current	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
31	1	Other environmental management tools other than those indicated above	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0.5	1	1	0
Max Score	62	<b>Total Score</b>	<b>35.5</b>	<b>29</b>	<b>30.5</b>	<b>33</b>	<b>30.5</b>	<b>35.5</b>	<b>28</b>	<b>30.5</b>	<b>25.5</b>	<b>27</b>	<b>25.5</b>	<b>21.5</b>	<b>25.5</b>	<b>34.5</b>	<b>28</b>	<b>32.5</b>
minus LUMS	61	<b>Maximum Score</b>	<b>61</b>	<b>60</b>	<b>61</b>	<b>61</b>	<b>60</b>	<b>60</b>	<b>60</b>	<b>60</b>	<b>59</b>	<b>59</b>	<b>60</b>	<b>60</b>	<b>57</b>	<b>60</b>	<b>59</b>	<b>60</b>
minus TFCA	60	<b>Percentage</b>	<b>58.2</b>	<b>48.3</b>	<b>50</b>	<b>54.1</b>	<b>50.8</b>	<b>59.2</b>	<b>46.7</b>	<b>50.8</b>	<b>43.2</b>	<b>45.8</b>	<b>42.5</b>	<b>35.8</b>	<b>44.7</b>	<b>57.5</b>	<b>47.5</b>	<b>54.2</b>
minus BR	58	<b>Category</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>E</b>	<b>E</b>	<b>E</b>	<b>E</b>	<b>E</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>D</b>
minus NPAES	57	<b>Category</b>	<b>FAIR</b>	<b>FAIR</b>	<b>FAIR</b>	<b>FAIR</b>	<b>FAIR</b>	<b>FAIR</b>	<b>FAIR</b>	<b>FAIR</b>	<b>POOR</b>	<b>POOR</b>	<b>POOR</b>	<b>POOR</b>	<b>POOR</b>	<b>FAIR</b>	<b>FAIR</b>	<b>FAIR</b>

Table 8. Criteria scores per municipality in the Mpumalanga Province and the Gauteng Province

No.	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Nkangala DM	Dr JS Moroka LM	Emakhazeni LM	Emalahleni LM	Steve Tshwete LM	Thembisile Hani LM	Victor Khanye (Old=Delmas) LM	Gert Sibande DM	Govan Mbeki LM	Msukaligwa LM	Ehlanzeni DM	Bushbuckridge LM	Thaba Chweu LM	Gauteng Province	City of Tshwane Metro Municipality
			1.1	1	IDP (Score 0-1)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
1.2	1	LEDs (Score 0-1)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1
1.3	1	SDF (Score 0-1)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1
1.4	1	LUM Scheme (Score 0-1)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0.5	1	1	0	0	0		1
1.5	1	Annual Report	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	1	1	1	1	1		0
1.6		Documents not sourced		LUMS	LED	LED, LUMS	NA	LED	LUMS	LED; LUMS	NA	LED; LUMS	SDF	NA	LED		Annual Report
2.1	1	IDP up to date	0.5	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	0		0
2.2	1	LEDs up to date	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0
2.3	1	SDF up to date	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	1		1
2.4	1	LUM up to date	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0
2.5	1	Annual Report up to date	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0
3.1	1	Summary biodiversity section or environmental analysis (Score 0-1). Score of 1 if IDP & SDF contain section.	1	0.5	1	0.5	0.5	0.5	1	0.5	0.5	0.5	1	0.5	1		0.5
3.2	1	Does the SDF (& IDP) contain land use/development guidelines e.g. avoid wetlands or sensitive areas. (Score 0-1). Score of 1 if IDP & SDF contain section.	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0	0	0	0.5	0		0

No.	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Mpumalanga Province													Gauteng Province	City of Tshwane Metro Municipality
			Nkangala DM	Dr JS Moroka LM	Emakhazeni LM	Emalahleni LM	Steve Tshwete LM	Thembisile Hani LM	Victor Khanye (Old=Delmas) LM	Gert Sibande DM	Govan Mbeki LM	Msukaligwa LM	Ehlanzeni DM	Bushbuckridge LM	Thaba Chweu LM		
3.3	1	Cross referencing to environmental analysis/environmental concerns/biodiversity data & land use guidelines (Score 0-1)	1	1	1	0.5	0.5	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	1		0.5
3.4	1	Includes environmental priorities (e.g. CBA, ecologically sensitive areas) & risks (Score 0-1). If in both IDP and SDF, Score = 1	1	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	1	0.5	0.5		0.5
4	1	Summary biodiversity maps (Score 0 -1). If maps are in IDP & SDF, Score = 1.	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.75	1	0.5	1		0.5
5	1	Does the LUM Scheme include a conservation zone or at minimum consider environmental protection (Score 0-1)	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1		0	0	0		
6	2	Climate change & mitigation measures (Score 0-2). The Score of 2 only attained if proper spatial guidelines indicated in SDF (& IDP) e.g. floodlines, buffers, high water yielding areas.	1.5	0	1.5	0.5	1.5	1	1	1.5	1.5	0	1	0.5	1.5		1.5
7	2	Key biodiversity legislation to demonstrate awareness for compliance (Score 0-2)	1	1	1	0	1.5	0	0.5	0	0	0.5	0.5	0	0.5		0
8	1	Environmental projects (Score 0 - 1)	0.5	0.5	0.5	1	1	0.5	1	1	0.5	0.5	1	1	1		1
9	2	Water quality and quantity with linkage to IDP projects (Score 0-2)	1	1	1	1	1.5	0.5	1	1	1	1	0.5	0	0		0
10	1	Environmental sustainability (Score 0 - 1)	1	1	1	1	1	0.5	1	1	1	1	1	1	0.5		1
11	1	Environmental Management as a Key Performance Area (KPA) (Score 0 - 1)	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	0.5	0	1	0	0		0
12	3	Inclusion of EMF, biosphere reserve (& TFCA for Ba-Phalaborwa LM & Bushbuckridge LM with maximum score of 3) (Score 0-1; 0-2 or 0-3)	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	3	2	0		0
13	1	Inclusion of Protected Areas and Conservation areas (at minimum the SDF map should include these areas, while the IDP summary biodiversity map should include these areas). (Score 0-1)	1	1	1	0.5	1	0.5		1		1	1	0.5	0.5		0.5
14	1	Inclusion of National Protected Areas Expansion Strategy Focus Areas	0	0	0	0	0	0		0			0	0	0		0
15	1	Inclusion of spatial biodiversity priority areas - CBA, ESA, NFEPA, systematic biodiversity plans based. (Score 0-1)	0.5	0.5	0.5	0	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0	0	0.5	0.5		0.5
16	1	Inclusion of land use / development guidelines specific to CBA, ESA, NFEPA, systematic plans (Score 0-1)	0.5	0.5	0.5	0	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0	0	0	0	0		0
17	2	Inclusion of appropriate natural resource management issues in IDP, LED, SDF; and environmental programmes (Score 0 - 2)	1.5	0	1.5	1.5	0.5	0	1	1.5	1.5	0.5	1.5	1.5	1		0.5
18	1	Inclusion of ecosystem services (Score 0-1)	0.5	0.5	1	0	1	0.5	1	0.5	0.5	0	0.5	1	0.5		1
19.1	1	Key environmental drivers (Score 0-1)	1	0	1	1	0.5	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	0.5		1
19.2	1	Key social drivers (Score 0-1)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1
20	1	EIA and other regulations (Score 0-1)	0.5	0	0.5	0	1	0.5	0.5	0.5	0	0	0.5	0.5	0.5		0.5
21	2	Manage disaster risk (Score 0-2) For a Score 2 to be allocated there should be strategic identification of flood prone areas in SDF (on a map), as a minimum.	1.5	1	1	1.5	1.5	1	1	1	1	1	0.5	0.5	0.5		1.5
22	3	Extent of integration / cross-referencing (Score 0 -3)	2	2	2	1	1.5	2	2	2	1	2	2	2	2		1
23	2	Alignment of overlapping municipalities - Environmental issues and management (Score 0 -2)	1.5	1	1.5	1	1	1	1	2	0.5	1	1	1	1		
24	1	Monitoring & evaluation (Score 0-1)	0.5	1	1	0.5	1	1	1	1	0.5	0.5	0.5	1	0.5		1

No.	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Nkangala DM	Dr JS Moroka LM	Emakhazeni LM	Emalahleni LM	Steve Tshwete LM	Thembisile Hani LM	Victor Khanye (Old=Delmas) LM	Gert Sibande DM	Govan Mbeki LM	Msakaligwa LM	Ehlanzeni DM	Bushbuckridge LM	Thaba Chweu LM	Gauteng Province	City of Tshwane Metro Municipality
25	1	Evidence of financial capacity (Score 0-1)	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	1	0.5	0.5	1	0	0.5	1	1	0.5		1
26	1	Evidence of environmental staff capacity (Score 0-1). Dedicated unit allocate score of 1.	0.5	0	0	0	0.5	0	0	0.5	0	0	0	0.5	0		0.5
27	1	Key institutional issues (Score 0-1). A score of 1 is allocated if institutional issues recognize environmental element/climate change.	1	0.5	1	1	1	0.5	0.5	1	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5		0.5
28	1	Adequate stakeholder engagement (DEDET, SANParks, Working for Water) (Score 0-1)	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	1	1	1	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	1	0.5		0.5
29		Biodiversity specific documents															
29.1	1	Municipal BSP / Cons Plan (Score 0-1). Provide references to provincial biodiversity plans & incorporation into final desired spatial outcome	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0
29.2	1	EMF (Score 0-1)	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	0		0
29.3	1	EMP (Score 0-1)	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0		1
29.4	1	SoER (Score 0-1)	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0		1
29.5	1	SEA (Score 0-1)	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0
29.6	1	Plans/budget to implement above biodiversity specific tools or update if existing (Score 0-1)	0	0	0	0.5	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0		0
30.1	1	BSP / Cons Plan - current	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0
30.2	1	EMF - current	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0
30.3	1	EMP - current	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0
30.4	1	SoER - current	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0
30.5	1	SEA - current	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0
31	1	Other environmental management tools other than those indicated above	1	0	1	0.5	0.5	0	0	0.5	0	0	0	1	0		1
Max Score	62	<b>Total Score</b>	<b>35</b>	<b>23.5</b>	<b>35</b>	<b>26</b>	<b>31</b>	<b>23</b>	<b>27.5</b>	<b>33</b>	<b>24.5</b>	<b>25.25</b>	<b>31.5</b>	<b>30</b>	<b>22</b>		<b>24.5</b>
minus LUMS	61	<b>Max Score</b>	<b>59</b>	<b>59</b>	<b>61</b>	<b>59</b>	<b>61</b>	<b>59</b>	<b>57</b>	<b>59</b>	<b>58</b>	<b>58</b>	<b>62</b>	<b>62</b>	<b>60</b>		<b>56</b>
minus TFCA	60	<b>Percentage</b>	<b>59.3</b>	<b>39.8</b>	<b>57.4</b>	<b>44.1</b>	<b>50.82</b>	<b>39.0</b>	<b>48.2</b>	<b>55.9</b>	<b>42.2</b>	<b>41.4</b>	<b>50.8</b>	<b>48.4</b>	<b>36.7</b>		<b>43.8</b>
minus BR	58	<b>Category</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>E</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>E</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>E</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>E</b>	<b>E</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>E</b>		<b>E</b>
minus NPAES	57	<b>Category Definition</b>	<b>FAIR</b>	<b>POOR</b>	<b>FAIR</b>	<b>POOR</b>	<b>FAIR</b>	<b>POOR</b>	<b>FAIR</b>	<b>FAIR</b>	<b>POOR</b>	<b>POOR</b>	<b>FAIR</b>	<b>FAIR</b>	<b>POOR</b>		<b>POOR</b>

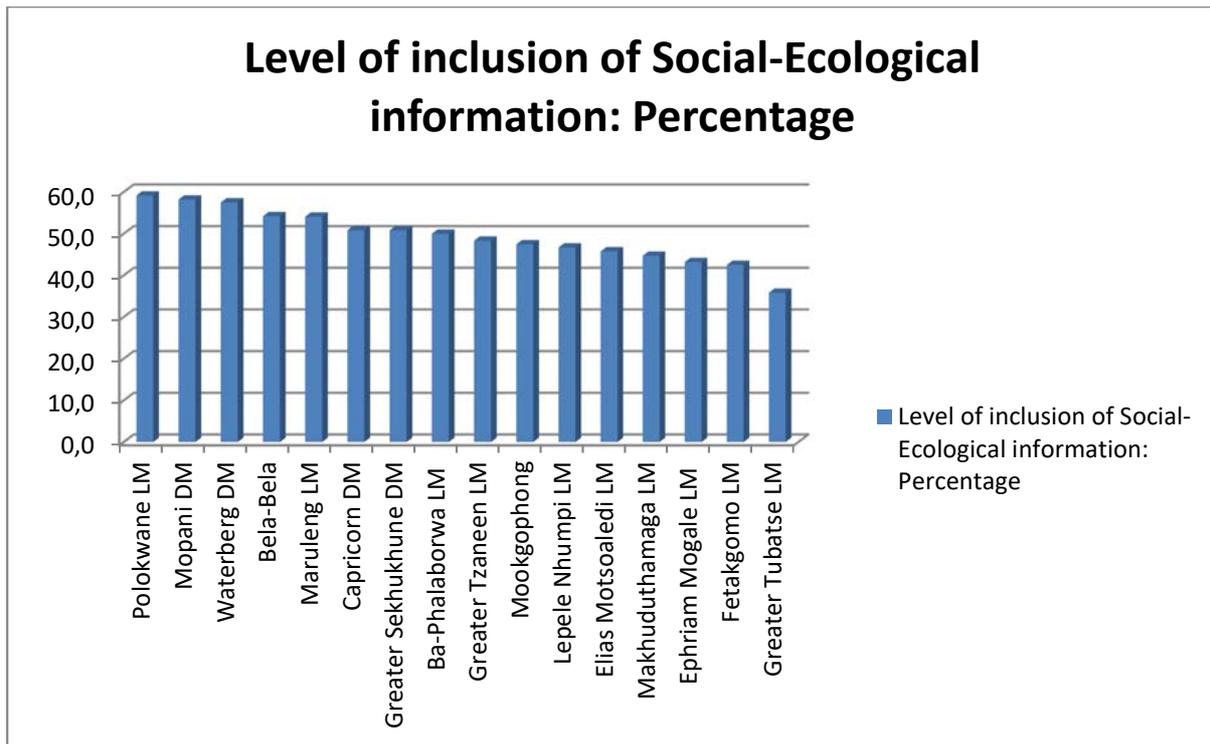
### 3.1. LIMPOPO PROVINCE

The results indicate that of the 16 municipalities, five are in a Poor social-ecological category (Category E), and 11 are in a Fair social-ecological category (Category D) (Table 9). The Greater Tubatse, Elias Motsoaledi, Ephriam Mogale, Fetakgomo and Makhuduthamaga local municipalities fall within a Poor social-ecological category, with percentage scores ranging from 35.8 % to 45.8 %, meaning the inclusion of social-ecological issues was poor. In general, the environmental analysis or data was poor and cross referencing was inadequate.

The Polokwane LM attained the highest percentage scores at 59.2 %, followed closely by the Mopani DM at 58.2 %. The Greater Tubatse LM attained the lowest percentage score at 35.8 %, followed by Fetakgomo LM at 42.5 %. In general, the DMs and the Polokwane LM attained scores of 50 % and above, whereas the majority of LMs attained scores below 50 % apart from Maruleng, Bela-Bela and Ba-Phalaborwa.

**Table 9.** Social-ecological scores, percentage and category achieved per municipality in the Limpopo Province.

Municipality	Maximum Score	Allocated Total Score	Percentage	Category	
1. Polokwane LM	60	35.5	59.2	D	FAIR
2. Mopani DM	61	35.5	58.2	D	FAIR
3. Waterberg DM	60	34.5	57.5	D	FAIR
4. Maruleng LM	61	33	54.1	D	FAIR
5. Bela-Bela	60	32.5	54.2	D	FAIR
6. Capricorn DM	60	30.5	50.8	D	FAIR
7. Greater Sekhukhune DM	60	30.5	50.8	D	FAIR
8. Ba-Phalaborwa LM	61	30.5	50.0	D	FAIR
9. Greater Tzaneen LM	60	29	48.3	D	FAIR
10. Mookgophong	59	28	47.5	D	FAIR
11. Lepele Nhumpi LM	60	28	46.7	D	FAIR
12. Elias Motsoaledi LM	59	27	45.8	E	POOR
13. Makhuduthamaga LM	57	25.5	44.7	E	POOR
14. Ephriam Mogale LM	60	25.5	43.2	E	POOR
15. Fetakgomo LM	61	25.5	42.5	E	POOR
16. Greater Tubatse LM	60	21.5	35.8	E	POOR



**Figure 2. Graph indicating the level of inclusion of social-ecological information per municipality in the Limpopo Province.**

In general, the municipalities with a Poor social-ecological category indicated a general lack or inadequacy in the environmental analysis, biodiversity guidelines, cross referencing, environmental issues, climate change strategies or programmes, key environmental legislation, green drop reporting, EMF and biosphere reserve inclusion, Protected Areas and Conservation Areas inclusion, environmental issues and programmes, environmental drivers, EIA and NWA wastewater regulations, disaster risk management, monitoring and evaluation; and alignment of overlapping issues, with less biodiversity sector specific documents and only an EMP.

The Fetakgomo LM and Makhuduthamaga LM were the only two municipalities that did not include an environmental analysis in the SDF, whereas all IDPs included an environmental analysis or chapter. All IDPs, apart from the Makhuduthamaga LM IDP, did not include biodiversity summary maps, a basic requirement for socio-ecological integration into municipal planning. Although sensitive areas are generally included in the SDFs, which by default require protection, a dedicated biodiversity guidelines section or land use table was absent. None of the municipalities have developed the national Key Performance Areas (KPAs) into local KPAs that include environmental management.

Most of the SDFs are out-dated and pre-date the Limpopo Conservation Plan Version 1 (2011), Version 2 (2013) and NFEPA (2011) (Refer Table 5). The quality of spatial biodiversity data was therefore inadequate in that the most up-to-date information was not used. At minimum, the IDPs should (ideally) have indicated the need to update the SDFs based on this information through the participation of the Limpopo Department of Economic Development, Environment and Tourism in the IDP process; and possibly the support of the South African National Biodiversity Institute, in the stakeholder engagement process. The only SDFs that post-dated these plans included the Mopani DM SDF 2014, the Maruleng DM SDF 2014 and the Waterberg DM SDF 2014.

Considering the above, of the 16 municipalities, two incorporated available provincial conservation plans, namely: the Maruleng LM SDF (2014) included and the Greater Sekhukhune DM IDP (2014) referenced Critical Biodiversity Areas from the Limpopo Conservation Plan Version 3 and Version 1 respectively. The Mopani DM SDF includes NFEPA wetlands and protected areas from the SANBI BGIS site and from the National Parks Board (presumably SANParks). The Maruleng LM SDF (2014) was the only document that included the Limpopo Protected Areas Expansion Strategy (presumably meaning the National Protected Areas Expansion Strategy) and noted the RESILIM Olifants Programme. The Greater Sekhukhune DM SDF (2013) was not sourced, however the IDP referenced C-Plan version 1. The Waterberg DM SDF 2014 did not include the C-Plans but integrated the Waterberg DM EMF 2010.

The Land Use Management Schemes were generally not sourced to determine the presence of a Conservation Zone, but for those that were assessed, namely Bela-Bela LM, Greater Tubatse LM, and Maruleng LM a conservation zone was not present, whereas for Ephriam Mogale LM, a Land Use Management Scheme is currently in draft form according to the IDP.

Climate change featured in all IDPs, with a strong emphasis on solar energy projects and the green economy. However, the strategic identification of flood prone areas in SDFs was absent. Only a few municipalities indicated the importance of floodplains and 1:100 year flood lines in areas that experience flooding.

Environmental projects with an allocated budget were evident and ranged from tree planting, waste recycling and environmental awareness campaigns to climate change programmes, EMPs and EMFs. However, where environmental management tools were lacking, these were rarely indicated as a project with budget allocated.

Water quality and quantity legislation was lacking, although six municipalities are implementing the Green Drop ratings for sewage waste water. Ecosystem services and the concept was generally lacking, although the development of an open space system in the SDF that is comprised of, amongst other ecological features, watercourses, wetlands, buffers and floodplains, was assessed as partly incorporating ecosystem services.

In conclusion, the municipalities demonstrated the requirement for sustainable environmental development as guided by national and provincial policies; and for the majority of municipalities, include an environmental analysis with maps, key environmental legislation, and priorities and issues in the planning documents, particularly the IDP and SDF (where available). However, the level of integration of the SDF environmental data into the IDP is generally inadequate.

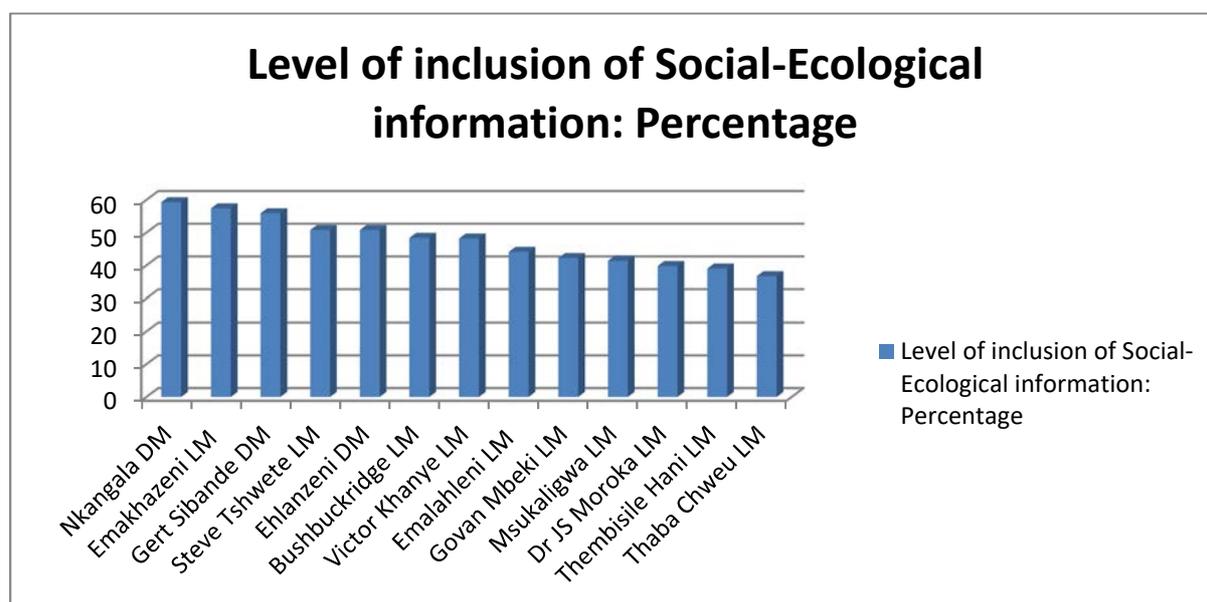
### **3.2. MPUMALANGA PROVINCE**

The results indicate that of the 13 municipalities, six are in a Poor social-ecological category (Category E), and seven are in a Fair social-ecological category (Category D) (Table 10, Figure 3). The Dr JS Moroka, Emalahleni, Thembisile Hani, Govan Mbeki, Msukaligwa and Thaba Chweu local municipalities fall within a Poor social-ecological category, with percentage scores ranging from 36.7 % to 43.2 %, meaning the inclusion of social-ecological issues was poor. In general, the IDP environmental analysis or data was poor or out-dated. Integration of the SDF into the IDP was also generally poor, especially since many of the municipal SDFs utilized the Mpumalanga Biodiversity Conservation Plan 2006, and in the case of Thaba Chweu LM SDF, which incorporated the MBSP 2014.

The Nkangala District Municipality (DM) attained the highest percentage score at 59.3 %, followed by the Emakhazeni LM at 57.4 %. The Thaba Chweu LM attained the lowest percentage score at 36.7 %, followed by Thembisile Hani LM at 39 %. In general, the DMs and the Emakhazeni and Steve Tshwete LMs attained scores greater than 50 %, whereas the majority of LMs attained scores below 50 %.

**Table 10.** Social-ecological scores, percentage and category achieved per municipality in the Mpumalanga Province.

Municipality	Maximum Score	Allocated Total Score	Percentage %	Category	
1. Nkangala DM	59	35	59.3	D	FAIR
2. Emakhazeni LM	61	35	57.4	D	FAIR
3. Gert Sibande DM	59	33	55.9	D	FAIR
4. Steve Tshwete LM	61	31	50.8	D	FAIR
5. Ehlanzeni DM	62	31.5	50.8	D	FAIR
6. Bushbuckridge LM	62	30	48.4	D	FAIR
7. Victor Khanye LM	57	27.5	48.2	D	FAIR
8. Emalahleni LM	59	26	44.1	E	POOR
9. Govan Mbeki LM	58	24.5	42.2	E	POOR
10. Msukaligwa LM	58	25.25	41.4	E	POOR
11. Dr JS Moroka LM	59	23.5	39.8	E	POOR
12. Thembisile Hani LM	59	23	39	E	POOR
13. Thaba Chweu LM	60	22	36.7	E	POOR



**Figure 3.** Graph indicating the level of inclusion of social-ecological information per municipality in the Limpopo Province.

In general, the municipalities with a Poor social-ecological category indicated a general lack or inadequacy in integrating the SDF environmental analysis and priorities into the IDP, climate change as an issue, environmental issues identification, lack of environmental capacity or training and absence of environmental management tools. Regarding the environmental analysis, dedicated sub-sections

regarding environmental issues (e.g. deforestation, alien plant species, building in floodplains) and land use management guidelines regarding environmental features were absent e.g. avoid wetlands and rivers, including buffer areas, floodplains etc. Flooding, for example, might be indicated in the 'Roads and Stormwater' or Disaster Management sections but this linkage is not realized. Although it is acknowledged that the biodiversity priorities (CBAs etc.) would provide protection, the biodiversity guidelines sub-section assists with clear guidance regarding particular biodiversity features that may not be evident in the biodiversity maps, particularly to non-biodiversity sectors.

All SDFs, apart from the Govan Mbeki LM SDF were dated after 2006, which means all should have integrated the Mpumalanga Biodiversity Conservation Plan (MBCP) 2006, at a minimum. Many SDFs were dated 2014, the same year as the Mpumalanga Biodiversity Sector Plan (MBSP) 2014 therefore its incorporation into these documents would be unlikely, which was evident apart from the Thaba Chweu LM SDF (2014) and the Emakhazeni LM SDF (2015), which both included the Mpumalanga Biodiversity Sector Plan (MBSP) 2014. Although the Emalahleni LM SDF (2013 – 2014) and Msukaligwa LM SDF (2010) mentioned the MBCP 2006, the maps did not reflect the biodiversity categories. Despite this, the integration of the SDF environmental data into the IDPs was generally poor, especially since the MBCP or MBSP data was used. However, in some municipalities the final desired spatial outcome or SDF map did not always reflect the environmental priorities, such as Emalahleni LM, Govan Mbeki LM, Thembisile Hani LM, Victor Khanye. For example, the final Govan Mbeki LM SDF Map 34 (desired spatial outcome) does not reflect the MCBP important areas in that Rural LED and land reform is identified in Highly Significant, as well as Important and Necessary areas.

The Maruleng DM and Thaba Chweu LM were the only SDFs in the Olifants Catchment to reference and include maps of NEMBA Threatened Ecosystems, although it is acknowledged that the MBCP and MBSP would have integrated the listed ecosystems.

The Land Use Management Schemes were generally not sourced to determine the presence of a Conservation Zone due to poor accessibility (Refer Table 4). The Emakhazeni LM LUM Scheme includes an 'Environmental Conservation' zone, and is based on the MCBP 2006 map and land use guidelines. The Govan Mbeki LM LUM Scheme includes a conservation zone whereas the Steve Tshwete and Emalahleni LMs do not. The Thaba Chweu LM, on the other hand, does not have a LUM Scheme. The Dr JS Moroka LM IDP had conflicting statements regarding the existence of a LUM Scheme.

The only two municipalities in the Olifants Catchment that have developed the national Key Performance Areas (KPA) to the local context were the Govan Mbeki LM and the Emalahleni LM. The Govan Mbeki LM developed the municipal KPA 5: Safety and Environment with one of the objectives being: 'Ensure a sustainable environment'. The Emalahleni LM IDP has developed a KPA sub-category: Sub-KPA 5: Safety and Environment, with Key Focus Area 21: Environmental Management.

Climate change featured in most IDPs, but not in Dr JS Moroka LM, Msukaligwa LM and Msukaligwa LM; and inadequately in Emalahleni LM, Thembisile Hani LM, Victor Khanye, Ehlanzeni DM and Bushbuckridge LM. However, the strategic identification of flood prone areas in SDFs was absent in all municipalities. Only some municipalities indicated the importance of floodplains and the 1:100 year flood lines in areas that experience flooding, such as the Govan Mbeki SDF, Nkangala DM IDP, Steve Steve Tshwete LM IDP and the Thembisile Hani LM IDP, whereas the Msukaligwa LM proposed the N17 national road through the floodplain of the open space system.

Environmental projects with an allocated budget were evident and ranged from tree planting, waste recycling and environmental awareness campaigns to climate change programmes, and in a few cases EMPs are planned. However, where environmental management tools were lacking, these were in

only a few instances indicated as a project with budget allocated. The Gert Sibande DM and Bushbuckridge LM reflect a good list of environmental projects.

Water quality and quantity legislation was lacking, although 9 of the 13 municipalities are implementing the Green Drop ratings for sewage waste water. Ecosystem services and the concept was generally lacking. However, the development of an open space system in the SDF that is comprised of, amongst other ecological features, watercourses, wetlands, buffers and floodplains, and the use of the MCBP or MBSP, as well as some indication of the importance of biodiversity for socio-economic well-being, were assessed as partly incorporating ecosystem services. The Emakhazeni LM SDF and LUM Scheme, for example, incorporate the MBSP and MCBP, as well as Ecological Support Areas as Strategic Water Source Areas, including a statement regarding ecosystems, and therefore received a full score, including the Steve Tshwete, Victor Khanye and Bushbuckridge local municipalities.

In conclusion, the municipalities demonstrated the requirement for sustainable environmental development and, for the majority of municipalities, include an environmental analysis with maps, priorities and issues in the planning documents, particularly the IDP and SDF (where available). However, the level of integration of the SDF environmental data into the IDP is generally inadequate.

### 3.3. GAUTENG PROVINCE

The City of Tshwane Metropolitan Municipality attained a Poor (Category E) social-ecological category at 43.8 % (Table 12). The City of Tshwane Metropolitan Municipality has a consolidated SDF and regional SDFs. The regional SDFs indicate the use of C-Plan for the 'Rural Component, Rural Management and Rural Development' (which is possibly a separate report). The regional SDFs state that, in the Tshwane Metropolitan Rural Component, which needed to be considered due to the merging with the Metsweding District Municipality, various rural land uses or rural activity zones are indicated on the Rural Component Map for each region with a table of restrictive or promotional conditions. However, the consolidated SDF and IDP make no reference to this, and the table of guidelines was not included in the regional SDFs.

Although the SDF has integrated an environmental component in the form of an Open Space and Environmental Sensitivity Plan (regional SDF), which includes the Gauteng conservation plan, an environmental analysis with ecological issues was absent in both documents, and therefore the environmental data was not adequately **presented** yet the quality of spatial biodiversity data used is very good. Furthermore, the municipality has a number of environmental management tools e.g. Climate Change Strategy, Environmental Management Policy, Integrated Environmental Plan.

This demonstrates that, although the social-ecological category was rated as Poor (43.8 %), socio-ecological planning is taking place, but that it is not adequately presented in an environmental analyses or component of the IDP and SDFs documents, despite the fact that the quality of the spatial biodiversity data is very good.

**Table 11.** Social-ecological category achieved for the City of Tshwane in the Gauteng Province.

Municipality	Maximum Score	Allocated Total Score	Percentage %	Category	
City of Tshwane Metropolitan Municipality	56	24.5	43.8	E	POOR

#### 4. SUMMARY CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS

The assessment was focused on the quality of inclusion of environmental information within key municipal planning documents, namely the IDP and SDF, and the cross-referencing or integration of such information into LEDs and Land Use Management Schemes (where these were available). Regarding the Land Use Management Schemes, the inclusion of a conservation zone that would support the environmental priorities identified in available systematic biodiversity plans or other environmentally sensitivity maps generated in the SDF needed to be identified (where the LUM Schemes could be sourced).

The summary results per District Municipality and per Local and Metropolitan Municipality are indicated in Table 12 and Table 13 respectively. With respect to the DMs, the Nkangala DM of the Mpumalanga Province attained the highest score allocation of 59.3 %, followed by the Mopani DM at 58.2 % of the Limpopo Province. With respect to the LMs, the Polokwane LM of the Limpopo Province attained the highest score allocation of 59.2 % followed by Emakhazeni LM of the Mpumalanga Province at 58.2 % (equivalent to the Mopani DM).

**Table 12.** Summary results for District Municipalities indicating social-ecological category percentage scores from highest to lowest

Municipality	Maximum Score	Allocated Total Score	Percentage %	Category		Province
Nkangala DM	59	35	59.3	D	FAIR	Mpumalanga
Mopani DM	61	35.5	58.2	D	FAIR	Limpopo
Waterberg DM	60	34.5	57.5	D	FAIR	Limpopo
Gert Sibande DM	59	33	55.9	D	FAIR	Mpumalanga
Capricorn DM	60	30.5	50.8	D	FAIR	Limpopo
Ehlanzeni DM	62	31.5	50.8	D	FAIR	Mpumalanga
Greater Sekhukhune DM	60	30.5	50.8	D	FAIR	Limpopo

**Table 13.** Summary results for Local and Metropolitan Municipalities indicating social-ecological category percentage scores from highest to lowest

Municipality	Maximum Score	Allocated Total Score	Percentage	Category		Province
Polokwane LM	60	35.5	59.2	D	FAIR	Limpopo
Emakhazeni LM	61	35	57.4	D	FAIR	Mpumalanga
Bela-Bela	60	32.5	54.2	D	FAIR	Limpopo
Maruleng LM	61	33	54.1	D	FAIR	Limpopo
Steve Tshwete LM	61	31	50.8	D	FAIR	Mpumalanga
Ba-Phalaborwa LM	61	30.5	50.0	D	FAIR	Limpopo
Bushbuckridge LM	62	30	48.4	D	FAIR	Mpumalanga
Greater Tzaneen LM	60	29	48.3	D	FAIR	Limpopo
Victor Khanye LM	57	27.5	48.2	D	FAIR	Mpumalanga
Mookgophong	59	28	47.5	D	FAIR	Limpopo
Lepele Nhumpi LM	60	28	46.7	D	FAIR	Limpopo
Elias Motsoaledi LM	59	27	45.8	E	POOR	Limpopo
Makhuduthamaga LM	57	25.5	44.7	E	POOR	Limpopo
Emalahleni LM	59	26	44.1	E	POOR	Mpumalanga
City of Tshwane Metro	56	24.5	43.8	E	POOR	Gauteng
Ephriam Mogale LM	60	25.5	43.2	E	POOR	Limpopo
Fetakgomo LM	61	25.5	42.5	E	POOR	Limpopo
Govan Mbeki LM	58	24.5	42.2	E	POOR	Mpumalanga
Msukaligwa LM	58	25.25	41.4	E	POOR	Mpumalanga
Dr JS Moroka LM	59	23.5	39.8	E	POOR	Mpumalanga
Thembisile Hani LM	59	23	39	E	POOR	Mpumalanga
Thaba Chweu LM	60	22	36.7	E	POOR	Mpumalanga
Greater Tubatse LM	60	21.5	35.8	E	POOR	Limpopo

The assessment is therefore based on the level of inclusion and integration of social-ecological issues into the IDP and SDF documents, as identified by the criteria in Table 2 (Section 2.1), which should be taking place but is not in many instances.

In light of the fact that an environmental analysis chapter was identified as a key criterion for integrating social-ecological issues, such as biodiversity priorities (e.g. CBAs and ESAs or other strategically identified environmentally sensitive areas), environmental issues (e.g. wood fuel harvesting and associated deforestation, water quality) and environmental management measures (e.g. awareness and energy programmes, Green Drop ratings), some municipal IDPs did not include an adequate environmental component in that the quality of environmental data was poor, whereas some SDFs lacked an environmental chapter altogether. Furthermore, the integration of the SDF environmental data, which was generally of better quality than the IDPs, was not integrated into the IDP document.

For example, the City of Tshwane Municipality SDF regional maps, referred to as the 'Open Space and Environmental Sensitivity Plan', have incorporated the Gauteng Department of Agriculture and Rural Development (GDARD) conservation plan's Irreplaceable Areas, Important Areas and Ecological

Support Areas, yet the IDP and the consolidated SDF make no reference to the conservation plan and do not include an environmental analysis component or chapter. The regional SDF documents, on the other hand, make reference to the C-Plan features and include a regional C-Plan map. In other words, although the spatial biodiversity data is very good, this is not adequately integrated in the IDP or reflected in the SDF documents, particularly the consolidated SDF.

In all the other municipalities the level of integration of the SDF environmental data into the IDP is generally inadequate or absent. The IDP environmental analysis, in most instances, provides a description of the bio-physical environment, indicates Nature Reserves and the importance of conservation for tourism development, with most municipal IDPs indicating environmental issues (e.g. deforestation, climate change, land degradation). However, the map of biodiversity priority areas, namely CBAs, Irreplaceable sites or other strategic environmentally sensitive areas, that were identified in the SDF and the set of biodiversity land use guidelines (where present) were not incorporated in the IDP. This is particularly important when one considers that the IDP Manager is responsible for ensuring sector spatial integration based on the SDF, and that the SDF document is usually done by external consultants.

With regards to the IDPs, the quality of social-ecological information is largely poor. In general, the environmental analyses chapter presented on biophysical information, such as climate, topography and geology, along with environmental problems. The BGIS municipal summaries data, South African vegetation types or other available data (e.g. wetlands, protected areas etc.) is not included. In other instances, environmental management was the focus with no information on biodiversity or the biophysical environment included. In some instances, namely the Thaba Chweu LM, Ephriam Mogale LM, Greater Tubatse LM, Makhuduthamaga LM, where a biophysical and environmental component exists, there is a strong focus on environmental resources as developmental constraints (e.g. water scarcity, dolomite sinkholes) or opportunities (e.g. tourism, water supply), rather than including good quality biodiversity data for long term sustainable environmental development e.g. ecological corridors, buffers etc.

In the Mpumalanga Province, the lack of good quality environmental data was particularly evident because the IDPs did not integrate the Mpumalanga conservation plan that was included in the SDFs. An environmental analysis was absent from the Dr JS Moroka LM, Emalahleni LM, Steve Tshwete LM, Govan Mbeki LM, Msukaligwa LM and Bushbuckridge LM; as the emphasis was on environmental management, with associated issues, and which focused mostly on waste management and air pollution, which are mandated functions. An environmental analysis component was absent in the Gert Sibande DM IDP, which was also the case for the City of Tshwane Metropolitan Municipality in the Gauteng Province (as noted above). In contrast, the Limpopo Province IDPs included an environmental analysis or chapter (whereas the SDFs of the Fetakgomo LM and Makhuduthamaga LM did not, although environmentally sensitive areas are considered). However, the environmental data of the IDPs was also generally of a poor quality, even if the SDFs pre-dated the Limpopo C-Plan information.

The IDP environmental chapter or analysis was generally not a well-structured or coherent section which flowed from the analyses to issues, legal requirements and management measures that would in turn identify relevant projects and programmes, which could further provide linkages to the socio-economic and institutional analyses issues. Cross referencing from environmental issues to associated projects (or identifying the lack of necessary projects) could also be improved upon.

For example, although key legislation might have been included in the IDP, this was generally not included in the environmental section, with associated implications for environmental management, which could then be linked to the identified environmental issues and relevant projects. The same can be said for environmental issues, which were identified by the majority of municipalities, but not always indicated in a dedicated sub-section of the environmental analysis. Consequently, most municipalities acknowledged the importance of the environment, yet this did not translate into any substantial incorporation of issues in terms of projects, programmes or environmental management tools. This is further demonstrated in that many municipalities identified water pollution as an environmental issue, which should be linked to the National Water Act and General Authorisations regarding sewage waste water quality etc.; and then to the Green Drop ratings score-card, which would be a project or programme, namely water quality management. In all municipalities where the green drop rating system is implemented, it fell within the sanitation services chapter. Although this is acknowledged as a logical inclusion to the chapter because it relates to sewage infrastructure management and maintenance programmes, it also relates to environmental management with implications for social well-being, and should be included in the environmental analysis, with cross referencing. The same could be said for recycling or waste management, rehabilitation of landfill sites and air quality monitoring projects. This is also complicated by the fact that these projects are often included under the national Key Performance Area for Service Delivery.

Many municipal IDPs recognized the importance of the environment and conservation for the tourism sector and associated economic opportunities, although there was little evidence of municipal IDP projects that could contribute towards job creation and economic development from an environmental perspective. Most projects, for example, included the upgrade or maintenance of provincial nature reserves, rather than expanding the network of municipal nature reserves for LED, tourism and conservation purposes. It is however recognized that financial constraints or the lack of land may prevent this; although it could still be identified as an unfunded programme for investigation.

Compared with the content of the socio-economic analyses and other components (chapters) of the IDP, the environmental chapter was substantially less in the majority of IDPs, yet all the IDPs recognized that the environment is important in ensuring sustainable development.

In general, the SDF documents on the other hand displayed better environmental data. The Mpumalanga Province and the Gauteng Province included the systematic biodiversity plans while the Limpopo Province SDFs mapped environmentally sensitive areas (apart from Ba-Phalaborwa LM), with the majority of SDFs pre-dating the systematic biodiversity plans. The only SDFs that post-dated these plans include the Mopani DM SDF 2014, which did not include C-Plan, and the Maruleng DM SDF 2014, which included C-Plan. The Greater Sekhukhune DM SDF 2013 was not sourced, however the IDP referenced C-Plan version 1; and therefore presumably the SDF has integrated Version 1.

Importantly, however, the SDFs lacked the strategic spatial location of flood prone areas and other environmental problems (e.g. erosion, deforestation). In most instances the SDFs did not strategically locate all proposed spatial projects, especially beyond the urban edge. However, it is acknowledged that a more detailed analysis is required to assess this issue more adequately and that several municipalities mapped proposed infrastructure backlogs and housing areas. This should be linked to strategically assessing the environmental impact of the SDF, which the SDFs indicated as required by law, but it was rarely addressed as a dedicated sub-section of the SDF.

Institutional capacity (environmental management staff), financial capacity (IDP projects) and relevant biodiversity specific documents, such as detailed biodiversity sector plans, EMPs, EMFs and SOERs,

required for adequate management of the environment is generally lacking. Of the 30 municipalities, 11 recognized the need for environmental capacity within the municipality. The Ba-Phalaborwa LM IDP indicated that environmental management and education is not addressed directly within the municipal budget allocations. The environmental management tools should be informing both the IDP and SDF. The absence of these key management tools does not permit adequate environmental management processes for sustainable environmental development and the well-being of society, particularly given the significant developmental demands required at the municipal level.

Furthermore, the following key indicators, amongst those indicated in the preceding chapter and above, represent a lack of environmental management capacity in the municipalities assessed:

- The lack of good biodiversity data in the form of systematic conservation plans or at minimum EMFs. However, the fact that many SDFs in the Limpopo Province are out-dated and/or pre-date the Provincial Limpopo Conservation Plan (Version 1 in 2011 and Version 2 in 2013) indicates a need to ensure that this biodiversity information is made available to the municipalities and relevant consultants by the Limpopo Department of Economic Development, Environment and Tourism (LEDET); and possibly with support from the South African National Biodiversity Institute mainstreaming programme. This also alludes to inadequate stakeholder engagement and inter-governmental relations during the IDP and SDF processes. For example: LEDET projects were evident in the majority of IDPs in the Limpopo yet the Limpopo Conservation Plan was not. The role of SANBI (and the National Department of Environmental Affairs) is not indicated although national programmes and outcomes are often indicated in the IDPs. The Resilim-O Project could assist with mainstreaming this information.
- Misinterpretation of national priorities or programmes associated with protecting the environment (biodiversity conservation).
- Lack of environmental management as a Key Performance Area is considered to be a significant negative to municipal planning. Environmental management is not a national KPA, although municipalities can develop municipal KPAs, as was done in the Govan Mbeki and the Emalahleni local municipalities.
- Environmental services function is often interpreted as management of gardens and parks, recreational facilities, waste disposal and cemeteries, as well as municipal environmental health services rather than biodiversity conservation management of natural resources. This function often falls under community services. This confusion was in fact highlighted in the Emakhazeni LM IDP.
- Solid waste management and air quality tends to be the focus of environmental management services, which are municipal mandates in terms of NEMWA and NEMAQ.
- National programmes and outcomes are often indicated in the IDPs, yet these programmes or outcomes are not adequately articulated in the IDP projects. Lack of knowledge pertaining to which programmes apply to which municipalities however negatively impacts the review process.
- Member of Executive Council comments on IDPs indicated that in many municipalities, projects were not informed by the municipal strategies. It is agreed that this is the case, as frequently the strategy or goal is environmental management yet environmental projects are not adequate e.g. lack of EMP, SOER, EMF etc.
- The lack of a municipal mandate to manage the environment restricts environmental management, despite the requirement for sustainable development.
- Although it is recognized that environmental management should be a function of planning in terms of various legislation (Constitution, NEMA, land use legislation), it is not a municipal mandate. The fact that it is a provincial and national mandate suggests that the relevant departments and para-

stats are required to take a more active role in assisting municipalities in this function e.g. funding and providing human resource capacity at the local level.

- In some municipalities, the conservation plans that were integrated into the environmental component of the SDF, which is particularly relevant to the Mpumalanga Province, were not adequately reflected in the desired spatial outcome or final SDF map in that environmental priorities (irreplaceable sites etc.) were target areas for intensive land uses, such as mining, or potentially high impact land uses e.g. LED activities and land reform. This may mean that the environmental data was misinterpreted. In the Limpopo Province, many of the SDF maps, as referenced in the SDF document, were not in the document and could not be assessed.
- Lack of adequate integration or representation of the SDF environmental component in the IDP and other non-biodiversity specific documents.

**The following recommendations are provided to improve the socio-ecological content of municipal planning documents:**

1. A Terms of Reference or Table of Contents relating to the environmental analysis section should be developed for municipal IDPs and SDFs (Refer Section 4.1). The Terms of Reference should reflect the criteria used in this assessment, at minimum. The Terms of Reference should permit a more coherent environmental analysis and management section in the IDP and SDF, which is not confused with environmental health or focused only on mandated functions, such as waste management and air pollution.
2. The South African Local Government Association (SALGA), the Provincial Department of Co-operative Governance, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs (CoGHSTA) and the relevant consultants should be provided the Terms of Reference.
3. A long term goal should involve the enhancement of human resource capacity in the municipalities, with an emphasis on establishing a dedicated unit that is responsible for environmental management as it relates to biodiversity management and protection. Possible support from provincial environmental and national sector departments and programmes, including SANBI and other programmes, such as RESILIM/AWARD (Resilim-O Project), should be investigated to fund these positions.
4. A short term goal should involve mainstreaming the Terms of Reference (Refer Section 4.1), with available systematic biodiversity plans (GIS shapefiles and documents) and other available data (as indicated in the Terms of Reference) could be implemented through the RESILIM/AWARD programme (Resilim-O Project), with support from the provincial environmental departments and SANBI's mainstreaming programmes, where necessary. Mainstreaming should include liaising with the municipalities, relevant consultants (e.g. SDF consultants), South African Local Government Association (SALGA) and the Provincial Department of Co-operative Governance, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs (CoGHSTA). The provincial environmental departments (compilers of the systematic biodiversity plans) and SANBI mainstreaming should be informed at minimum of the process.
5. The IDP and SDF processes, not only the documents, should be better integrated. For example, the SDF should be reviewed annually along with the IDP, rather than every 5 years. The SDF is generally not well integrated into the IDP which presumably means that these processes are not

as well aligned as they could be. Furthermore, as indicated in the Nkangala DM SDF (2014), the SDF proposed projects and programmes can then be incorporated into the IDP and associated budgeting process.

6. The spatial location of proposed spatial projects should be indicated in the SDF with the environmental map, particularly those beyond the urban edge. A more in depth analysis of the IDP projects and their spatial location in the SDF is required, however, it appears from this relatively rapid review that most IDP spatial projects are not spatially presented in the SDF, although the IDP does indicate location (where projects are required, for example Ward 1), in most instances. It is acknowledged that in a number of instances service delivery backlogs and housing expansion areas are mapped, for example Ephriam Mogale LM, Elias Motsoaledi LM. However, the locality of all proposed projects should be determined according to and assessed against the spatial environmental priorities (e.g. CBA, irreplaceable sites, open space system) and final SDF map, which should incorporate the environmental priorities. Where biodiversity priority areas cannot be accommodated, other biodiversity areas could be identified. This is particularly important when one considers that the IDP Manager is responsible for ensuring sector spatial integration based on the SDF, and that the SDF document is usually done by external consultants.
7. As linked to the above, the key planning documents should improve the spatial integration of environmental issues, such as identifying areas of high alien infestation that require EPWP or Working for Water intervention, water pollution, strategic location of flood prone areas, housing required in biodiversity priority areas, soil erosion and land degradation areas requiring LandCare programmes, EPWP programmes or municipal rehabilitation programmes. In this regard, inter-governmental relations need to be strengthened.
8. Land Use Management Schemes should be informed by the systematic biodiversity plans and associated guidelines to ensure sustainable development; and should include a conservation zone. Of the nine Land Use Management Schemes that were sourced, two included a conservation zone, namely Emakhazeni LM and Govan Mbeki LM in the Mpumalanga Province.

#### 4.1. TERMS OF REFERENCE FOR IDPs AND SDFs

The following **preliminary** Terms of Reference is recommended for IDPs and SDFs, which is based on the criteria presented in Table 2 (Section 2.1). The IDP will probably be less detailed than the SDF. A **preliminary** checklist, as per Table 2 (Section 2.1), is also provided as part of the Terms of Reference.

#### Environmental Analysis Chapter

##### 1. Introduction

- Aim and Objective
- Environmental Legislation, Sustainable Development and Relevance to Planning

For example -

National Environmental Management Act	Polluter Pays Principle, Listed developments require Environmental Impact Assessments
National Water Act	No development in wetlands or rivers without an authorisation, sewage wastewater effluent compliance,

National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act	No development in Listed Threatened Ecosystems, Requirement to integrate Bioregional Plans into IDPs and SDFs – Systematic biodiversity plans/CBA Maps are precursors to Bioregional Plans and should inform IDPs and SDFs.
National Environmental Management: Waste Act	Integrated Waste Management Plans required by municipalities.

- Environmental Management Structure (if present)
- Value of Environment (Ecosystem Services and Sustainable Development)

## 2. Bio-physical Environment and Biodiversity Features

- Climate, Topography, Geology
- South African Vegetation Types (and Listed Threatened Ecosystems)
- Wetlands
- Key Rivers
- Threatened Habitats and Species (Fauna and Flora)
- Protected Areas, Conservation Areas and the National Protected Areas Expansion Strategy
- Land Cover
- Ecosystem Services e.g. high water yielding areas.
- Include summary biodiversity maps and land cover map. The IDP to include summary information compared with the SDF which should have more detailed maps. Cross referencing from the IDP to the SDF should be indicated.
- Clear table or sub-section on biodiversity guidelines for the biodiversity features as it relates to land use management e.g. protect wetlands and rivers, forest and Threatened ecosystems, implement buffers around floodplains, wetlands and rivers, consideration of flood lines, types of developments that could be considered in sensitive environments e.g. eco-tourism, requirement for EIAs and ecological sensitivity mapping; and other generic development guidelines.

**\* Available resources:** Existing Environmental Management Frameworks, Biosphere Reserves, SANBI BGIS: Limpopo Municipalities - <http://bgis.sanbi.org/municipalities/choose-muni.asp?prov=LIM>, Mpumalanga Municipalities - <http://bgis.sanbi.org/municipalities/choose-muni.asp?prov=MP>, Gauteng Province: City of Tshwane - <http://bgis.sanbi.org/municipalities/show-muni-LUDS.asp?muni=TSH>; Other BGIS data: <http://bgis.sanbi.org/projectsearch.asp?prov=Nat>

## 3. Systematic Biodiversity Plan for the Municipality

- Include the Critical Biodiversity Areas Map and land use guidelines table. The SDF should include more detailed information compared with the IDP.
- Cross reference to the SDF and indicate level of integration into the final SDF Map i.e. have biodiversity priority areas been compromised and offset areas selected to compensate for the loss.
- The GIS shapefiles used to compile the SDF must be submitted to the municipality.

**\* Available resources:** SANBI BGIS: Limpopo Province - <http://bgis.sanbi.org/limpopo/project.asp>, Mpumalanga Province - <http://bgis.sanbi.org/MBCP/project.asp> and <http://bgis.sanbi.org/MHwetlands/project.asp>, Gauteng Province: <http://bgis.sanbi.org/gauteng/project.asp>

#### **4.Environmental Management Issues**

- Identify the key environmental issues
- Environmental issues can relate to both the natural environment and the management of the environment. For example: Water pollution, soil erosion, deforestation, flooding, waste pollution, dolomite areas, lack of environmental capacity (governance), lack of funding.
- Link the issue to environmental legislation, where relevant. For example: Wetland loss is occurring. Protection of wetlands is provided through the National Water Act.
- Align district and local issues.
- Identify climate change as an issue and identify appropriate management measures e.g. biodiversity protection for carbon sequestration, wetland protection and river buffers as flood mitigation measures.
- If a State of Environment Report has been compiled, summary data can be used and cross-referencing included.
- Strategically identify problem areas (e.g. flood prone areas, water pollution, deforestation) in the SDF that require intervention. These should be listed in the IDP and cross-referenced to the SDF.

#### **5.Environmental Management and associated Environmental Projects and Programmes**

- Identify all the environmental management tools and policies in place e.g. Environmental Management Plan, State of Environment Report, Climate Change Strategy.
- Indicate district environmental management tools that could be used where these do not exist at the local level.
- Link the management tool to the issues identified, where relevant. For example: Soil erosion as part of the EMP, flood prone areas as part of the SDF and disaster management plan, Climate Change mitigation is assisted through implementation of the Critical Biodiversity Areas Map.
- If the environmental management tool details the issues and associated management measures these should be cross-referenced in the IDP and SDF.
- Identify all Environmental Projects or Programmes that are linked to the environmental issues, where relevant. For example (1) Green Drop rating system and waste water quality programme for wastewater effluent; (2) Recycling and re-use for waste reduction and climate change mitigation; (3) Identifying flood prone areas for climate change mitigation; (4) EPWP alien plant control.
- Identify how the SDF and Land Use Management Scheme have incorporated biodiversity and relevant management measures. For example, the identification of a conservation zone and linkage to systematic biodiversity plans, no development permitted in floodplains.
- Identify how environmental management falls within the municipal Key Performance Areas or develop a municipal Key Performance Area that includes environmental management for sustainable development.

\* Environmental Management, Projects and Programmes could be indicated in table format.

## 6. Monitoring and Evaluation of the Environment and associated Environmental Management Tools

- Indicate structure responsible for monitoring and evaluation. This should ideally be an environmental management unit responsible for biodiversity conservation and management of natural resources.
- Indicate monitoring and evaluation methodology with reference to the environment. For example: through State of Environment Reporting, use of revised CBA maps, application of a Land Use Management System which controls land use changes, use of GIS software to capture land use changes.
- Indicate monitoring and evaluation methodology with reference to the tools and projects i.e. monitoring the required documents revision and project progress, review schedules.

The following *preliminary checklist* can be used to ensure inclusion of social-ecological criteria:

CRITERIA	YES / NO
<p>1. Are the following key planning documents up to date</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IDP</li> <li>• SDF</li> <li>• LED</li> <li>• LUM Scheme</li> <li>• Annual Report</li> </ul>	
<p>2. Inclusion of -</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• (1) Summary environmental section / environmental analysis in non-biodiversity specific planning documents (IDP, SDF) (e.g. included in the IDP situation analysis which is comparable to demography, economy etc.). Score of 1 if in IDP and SDF.</li> <li>• (2) Summary land use management/biodiversity development guidelines (e.g. avoid wetlands, riparian areas, buffers, threatened ecosystems, requirement for EIAs etc.</li> <li>• (3) Environmental priorities (sensitive environments) and associated risks (or impacts e.g. pollution, erosion, informal housing etc.).</li> <li>• (4) Reference thereto in other / non-spatial documents (LED, IDP).</li> </ul>	
<p>3. Inclusion of -</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• (1) Summary biodiversity map(s) in the biodiversity summary/environmental analysis of non-biodiversity specific planning documents (e.g. included in the IDP situation analysis which is comparable to graphs and figures relating to demography, economy etc.); and</li> <li>• (2) Reference to the documents that include this data (i.e. LED makes reference to the SDF/IDP or EMP containing this data).</li> </ul>	
<p>4. Does the LUM Scheme include conservation zones that would permit the protection of important biodiversity areas (other than through NEMPAA)</p>	
<p>5. Inclusion of -</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• (1) Climate change as a key environmental issue; and</li> <li>• (2) Planning mitigation measures e.g. flood lines, alternative energy options, maintaining ecological corridors etc. The inclusion of recycling operations, alternative or renewable energy solutions (solar) and district air quality management plans should also be included.</li> </ul>	

CRITERIA	YES / NO
6. Inclusion of key biodiversity related legislation specific to the IDP and SDF.	
7. Inclusion of environmental projects linked to the environmental issues identified in the situation analysis of the IDP.	
8. Inclusion of – <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• (1) water quality and quantity management for sustainability, with</li> <li>• (2) linkages to projects in the IDP or other e.g. Green drop ratings and Water Quality Management Plan, recycling, rainfall harvesting.</li> </ul>	
9. Principles of environmental sustainability included. National and provincial policy should be articulated at local level, for example: strategic objective, vision or mission statement, Key Focus Area.	
10. Inclusion of environmental management (or equivalent) as a Key Performance Area <sup>2</sup> in the IDP.	
11. Are the following biodiversity planning instruments included, where relevant, namely: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• (1) Environmental Management Frameworks e.g. Letaba &amp; Olifants EMF 2009, Waterberg EMF 2010,</li> <li>• (2) Institutional mechanisms such as Trans-frontier Conservation Areas (TFCAs); and</li> <li>• (3) Biosphere Reserves</li> </ul>	
12. Inclusion of formal Protected Areas and informal Conservation Areas.	
13. Inclusion of the National Protected Areas Expansion Strategy Focus Areas.	
14. Inclusion of spatial biodiversity priority areas e.g. Critical Biodiversity Areas & Ecological Support Areas (as identified in appropriate systematic biodiversity plans) as areas of high environmental sensitivity. This includes appropriate use of national (e.g. Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Areas; Protected Area expansion priorities) and provincial (Mpumalanga Biodiversity Conservation Plan v1/Mpumalanga Biodiversity Sector Plan, Limpopo Conservation Plan, and Gauteng C-Plan 3.3) priorities into planning.	
15. Inclusion of land use and land use management guidelines (as part of the Land Use Management System) in the SDF that are linked to the land use guidelines of the biodiversity priorities above.	
16. Inclusion of appropriate - <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• (1) Natural resource management issues (e.g. alien invasive species, water quality, water use); and</li> <li>• (2) Programmes or projects into the non-spatial municipal planning instruments (e.g. IDP, LED).</li> </ul> Criterion 17.1 is linked to criterion 3.4 but relates to appropriate inclusion rather than only listing what is included.	
17. Appropriate inclusion of ecosystem services (e.g. high water yield or strategic water source areas, floodplains and wetlands, buffers) including the understanding of the concept of ecosystem services.	
18. List of key - <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• (1) Environmental drivers; and</li> <li>• (2) Social drivers.</li> </ul>	

<sup>2</sup> Local Government: Municipal Performance Regulations R805 (2006) prescribes five Key Performance Areas.

CRITERIA	YES / NO
19. Inclusion of Environmental Impact Assessment or other legislation/regulations (National Water Act & pollution etc.) for the proposed infrastructure projects or other e.g. land fill sites, sewage and water quality monitoring etc.	
20. Appropriate inclusion of - <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• (1) areas required to manage disaster risk (e.g. floodplains, steep slopes and erodible soils) (spatial and other means of inclusion in planning processes); and</li> <li>• (2) an indication/understanding that this relates to climate change, where applicable. For example: strategic identification of flood prone areas in the SDF.</li> </ul>	
21. Where district and local municipalities have overlapping planning instruments do these appear to be aligned in terms of - <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• (1) Environmental issues and</li> <li>• (2) Management</li> </ul> In other words, are the issues at district level integrated at the local level and visa-versa.	
22. Monitoring and evaluation recommendations	
23. Indicate financial capacity or lack thereof for environmental management or particular funding of projects and programmes.	
24. Indicate environmental staff capacity or lack thereof and need for funding etc.	
25. Indicate institutional issues as it relates to environmental management e.g. need for better inter-governmental relations.	
26. Indicate adequate stakeholder engagement in relation to environmental management	
27. Indicate biodiversity specific documents and environmental management tools that exist for the local and district municipality, and indicate if these are up to date.	
28. GIS shapefiles used to compile the SDF	

## 5. ADDENDUM: EVALUATION RESULTS TABLES

**Table 14.** Limpopo Province: Mopani District and Capricorn District- Allocated scores for each criterion per municipality with a brief summary motivation indicating level of social-ecological content.

Key: S20 means Section 20. Red boxes = Existing document was not sourced due to accessibility issues. Orange box: Criterion 5 (LUM Scheme) - means the score is not applicable as the LUM could not be sourced.

No	Max Score	Limpopo Province	Mopani DM	Score	Greater Tzaneen LM	Score	Ba-Phalaborwa LM	Score	Maruleng LM	Score	Capricorn DM	Score	Polokwane LM	Score	Lepele Nhumpi LM	Score
1.1	1	IDP (Score 0-1)	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1
1.2	1	LEDs (Score 0-1)	Y	1	Y (Indicated in IDP S24. LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT ANALYSIS)	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y (Indicated in IDP S6.2.1)	1	Y. LED document provided is dated 2007.	1
1.3	1	SDF (Score 0-1)	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y (Indicated in S3.6.3.1 of IDP)	1	Y	1	Y	1
1.4	1	LUM Scheme (Score 0-1)	Dependent on local municipal LUMS.	1	Y. (Indicated in SDF - The Tzaneen Town Planning Scheme is in process to be extended to include the whole municipal area in order to have a land use management scheme for the entire area. The scheme is already advertised as an interim Scheme and is foreseen to be proclaimed in due course (stated in June 2008).	1	Y (Indicated in IDP: LUM adoption)	1	Y (see below)	1	IDP: The four local municipalities have promulgated the Land Use Management Scheme whereas Polokwane LM only has a Town Planning Scheme for Polokwane and Seshego.	1	Y. Town Planning Scheme sourced but with no table of zones or map. SDF: The Polokwane/ Perskebult Town Planning Scheme, 2007 -Land Use Management Scheme for the largest clusters / growth point (Polokwane/Perskebult Provincial Growth Point (PGP)). The 2007 Land Use Management Scheme is a more comprehensive and practical Land Use Scheme than the 1999 Town Planning Scheme. The existing Land Use Management scheme is currently only limited to the urban area of Polokwane City as well as the adjacent small holdings / farm portions (Urban Fringe Area). Score of 0.5 as it does not cover LM.	0.5	Y (Indicated in IDP as an Approved Sector Plan).	1
1.5	1	Annual Report	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y (DV accessed from website)	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1
1.6		Documents exist but not sourced	Chapters 5 of SDF.		LED; LUMS.		LUM Scheme		Not applicable.		SDF		LED, Table of Zones or maps of LUMS		LUM Scheme.	
2.1	1	IDP up to date	2011-16. (2013-14). Approved 30th May 2013. (DV accessed)	0.5	Yes. 2013 - 2014. (DV accessed).	0.5	Yes. 2014/15. Approved 31 May	1	Yes. IDP 2013-2014. Approved 29 May	1	Yes. 2014-2015 (DV accessed)	1	Final IDP 2014 (DV accessed)	1	Yes. 2014-2015 (DV accessed).	1

No	Max Score	Limpopo Province	Mopani DM	Score	Greater Tzaneen LM	Score	Ba-Phalaborwa LM	Score	Maruleng LM	Score	Capricorn DM	Score	Polokwane LM	Score	Lepele Nhumpi LM	Score
							2014 (DV accessed).		2014 (DV accessed from website)							
2.2	1	LEDs up to date	No. 27 October 2006	0	No. reviewed 2012 June (in IDP). Local Economic Development Strategy	0	No. April 2013 review. (DV accessed LED Strategy document)	0	No. LED Strategy 2009 (DV accessed latest from website)	0	LED S3.6.3.1 Capricorn District LED Strategy (2006) - The present CDM LED Strategy was developed in 2006	0	No date provided. (IDP S6.2.1 Local Economic Development Strategy)	0	Yes. IDP states - developed first in 2007 and reviewed in 2013. LED document provided is dated 2007.	1
2.3	1	SDF up to date	Yes. Draft Report - April 2014	1	Yes. May 2009 therefore review due in 2015.	1	No. November 2008.	0	Yes. 17 October 2014: REVIEW OF THE MARULENG SDF – DRAFT REPORT. Also draft 'Review of the Maruleng SDF - Spatial Analysis Report' is not dated but workshops held in 2014.	1	Yes. IDP states: District Council has adopted the 2011-2016 SDF. IDP S2.3.4 Capricorn Spatial Development Framework (SDF)	1	Yes. Polokwane Municipality SDF, 2010. Legally only necessary to update every 5 years.	1	No. 2007. IDP: A reviewed SDF was approved by council in 2008 financial year. Should have been reviewed in 2013.	0
2.4	1	LUM up to date	See LMs	0	See above. IDP S10.8: Currently LUMS is not operational in the municipality pending the passing of the relevant bill nationally.	0	IDP states: Land Use Management Scheme (LUMS) was adopted by Council. Ba-Phalaborwa Land-use Scheme, 2008. Doubtful that it is up to date, therefore Score of 0.	0	No. LUM Scheme 2008. According to the IDP it is annual reviewed (pg 149). (DV accessed from website)	1	N	0	No.	0	IDP: Approved LUMS in the 2007/8 financial year. Should have been reviewed in 2013 with SDF. LUMS not sourced.	0
2.5	1	Annual Report up to date	No. 2011/12.	0	No. 2011/2012	0	No. 2009-2010	0	No. 2012/2013 Draft	0	No. 2010/2011.	0	No. Draft 2013-2014	0	No. 2012/2013.	0
3.1	1	Summary biodiversity section or environmental analysis (Score 0-1)	Yes. IDP Section 2.7: Environmental analysis - Good. SDF: Contains Environmental Analysis for each area.	1	Yes. IDP: Environmental Analysis (S18.6) - Poor. SDF Environmental analysis.	1	Yes. IDP: Chapter 1.1. Natural Environment. According to the IDP, the environmental analysis (S1.1) was sourced from the SDF, and the SDF contains a SEA of the impact of development proposals contained in the SDF. Threatened species, alien species etc., no vegetation - Fair. SDF: Yes.	1	IDP Section 3.2 Environmental Social and Economic Analysis. Poor - only issues. SDF 2014: S3.4 ENVIRONMENTAL FEATURES & S3.4.3 CRITICAL BIODIVERSITY AREAS; Figure 18a: Maruleng LM - Strategic Water Source Areas; Figure 18b: Maruleng LM - Threatened Terrestrial Ecosystems; Figure 19: Maruleng LM - Protected Areas and Conservation Land Use; Figure 20: Maruleng LM - Limpopo Conservation Plan-Key Categories; but no Figures/Maps in document. SDF Review Goal =	1	Yes. IDP Section 2.4.10. Climate and Environmental Analysis - Poor (mainly regarding issues) - page 63. Although lack of SDF, IDP inclusion allocates score of 1.	1	Yes. IDP: S6. Environmental Management. Fairly good - range of features and issues etc. SDF: S3.2 ENVIRONMENTAL FEATURES	1	Yes. IDP S5. ENVIRONMENTAL ANALYSIS - Poor (mainly regarding issues). SDF: S2.6 Environment	1

No	Max Score	Limpopo Province	Mopani DM	Score	Greater Tzaneen LM	Score	Ba-Phalaborwa LM	Score	Maruleng LM	Score	Capricorn DM	Score	Polokwane LM	Score	Lepele Nhumpi LM	Score
									Environmental Management. Refer SDF 4.4: DEVELOPMENT OBJECTIVE 1: Actively protect, enhance and manage the natural environmental assets of the Municipality (notes RESILIM Olifants Programme).							
3.2	1	Does the SDF (& IDP) contain land use/development guidelines e.g. avoid wetlands or sensitive areas. (Score 0-1)	IDP: No. SDF: Settlement Development Guidelines, 32m development buffer, flood line determinations required, avoid wetlands and rivers as sensitive areas. Includes disaster risks indicated in Disaster Management Plan.	0.5	Yes. SDF 4.6 LAND USE POLICY AND DEVELOPMENT GUIDELINES/IDP indicates LUMS as a project (KPA: Spatial Rationale). SDF S2.9.1 (SEA issues section indicates some sensitive areas etc. to be protected e.g. issue - lack of wetland protection).	1	IDP: Yes. The Municipality adopts the MD SDF & district guidelines for land use management to inform the local LUM Scheme. The IDP states that the SDF includes the development of Guidelines for a Land Use Management System and basic guidelines for development. SDF: Good development guidelines to protect biodiversity. The sensitive environments can be protected by means of the following strategies and policies - page 57. SDF provides environmental guidelines for the implementation of the spatial development framework.	1	Yes. SDF 2007 Land-use guidelines for game reserves and game lodges, agriculture, resorts, nodal development. Example: agriculture to avoid sensitive areas, 1:100 year flood line delineations. These are not referenced in the new SDF 2014 though.	0.5	IDP: No. SDF: Unknown.	0	IDP: No, however it does indicate the need to protect wetlands, ridges, rivers (Section 6 Environmental Management). SDF: 6.4.5.1 PROTECTION OF ENVIRONMENTAL SENSITIVE AREAS. S3.2.19.2 PROTECTION OF SENSITIVE HABITATS AND CULTURAL SITES - Good clear indication to protect wetlands, The 100m buffer zones around the all streams, rivers and drainage channels in the Municipal area etc. SDF - TABLE 54: ENVIRONMENTAL STRATEGIES AND POLICIES - reflective of land use and land management guidelines in sensitive areas. Land Use Management Policy (2012) - Impact on the environment –is the property adjacent to a vulnerable eco-sensitive environment e.g. wetlands protected area, mining etc.; and,	1	IDP: No. SDF: According to the Map the mountainous section occurring northeast of the Lepelle-Nkumpi Municipality area should be considered highly sensitive and no development can be supported in these areas. Some guidelines but not complete. No map in document.	0.5

No	Max Score	Limpopo Province	Mopani DM	Score	Greater Tzaneen LM	Score	Ba-Phalaborwa LM	Score	Maruleng LM	Score	Capricorn DM	Score	Polokwane LM	Score	Lepele Nhumpi LM	Score
3.3	1	Cross referencing to environmental analysis/environmental concerns/biodiversity data & land use guidelines (Score 0-1)	Yes. SDF, Letaba EMF, CRDP referenced in IDP. CRDP references the SDF, IDP and the environment/biodiversity concerns. SDF basic guidelines e.g. protect wetlands, not in IDP. LED considers environmental protection and impact of LED on environment, but no section on environment linked to IDP or SDF, although SDF guides LED. Annual report references other documents. SDF cross references IDP issues.	1	Yes. IDP (Section C, KPA1, pg 261) references SDF, which includes environmental protection, sustainable development, environmental and resource conservation. IDP mentions K2C biosphere reserve (S18.6.d). Annual Report very limited in terms of environment & SDF. SDF includes some of the IDP environmental concerns. SDF does not reference K2C Biosphere Reserve, although protection of the environment is clear. Other documents not available to determine cross-referencing. Letaba EMF not referenced.	0.5	Yes. IDP includes SDF, LED (S1.4.5) & LUM Scheme. Letaba EMF not referenced. State of environment is a key issue for LED strategy (IDP, S4.4, pg 187). LED Strategy includes environment, and references SDF (S2.2.12) & IDP (S2.2.13). Annual report (2009-10) references environmental management issues only, and only mentions SDF & LUM System. SDF references IDP and LED - REVIEW OF PLANS AND AVAILABLE INFORMATION.	1	IDP S7.2. Spatial Development Framework (SDF) & inclusion of Drakensberg Env Zone but not general development guidelines; 7.3. Land Use Management Scheme; 7.4. Local Economic Development (LED) Strategy, which requires sustainable development. LED consulted IDP & SDF; includes conservation and the K2C biosphere; and emphasis on sustainable development for the environment. Letaba EMF not referenced, but reference to Limpopo C-Plan in SDF outweighs the EMF. The IDP was approved before the SDF therefore CBAs not cross referenced.	0.5	Cannot determine cross referencing without all documents. However, the IDP makes reference to SDF, environmental analysis, LED, LUMS, environmental concerns.	0.5	Yes. IDP cross references SDF, LED, national CRDP. SDF references IDP and LED, with environmental concerns.	1	IDP: Yes, references SDF, LED, national CRDP, EMP. SDF references IDP.	1
3.4	1	Includes environmental priorities (e.g. CBA, environmental sensitive areas) & risks (Score 0-1)	IDP: Yes e.g. climate change, environmental degradation. Also see point 17 below. SDF includes environmental priorities and risks.SDF 2014: S11.8 - The SDF mapped the protected areas, parks and wetlands received from National Parks Board and BGIS.	1	IDP & SDF: Yes. PRIORITY ISSUE: SUSTAINABLE ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT & SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT. S18: Env Health Management. Also see 19.1 below.	1	Yes. IDP Objective is environmental sustainability (S1.1.12.3). Includes issues in Section 1.1. Section 1.4.12: Environmental degradation, Air pollution, Deforestation, Soil pollution, Siltation & Land degradation. SDF: Environmental maps but does not map strategic sensitive environments. Text mentions sensitive areas e.g. rivers and floodplains, RAMSAR sites, wetlands.	1	Yes. IDP S3.2.1.1 Environmental issues (See 19.1 below) and priorities in IDP e.g. K2C Biosphere-establishment of the Drakensberg Environmental Zone, Wetland in Makgaung area, & Heritage Sites. SDF 2014: S3.4.3 CRITICAL BIODIVERSITY AREAS. No risks. SDF 2007 included environmental priorities and risks, but review did not include risks only spatial priorities. Score of 1 still allocated.	1	IDP: Yes in terms of environmental problems in environmental analysis section. No environmental priorities. SDF not available to determine environmental priorities.	0.5	IDP: Yes, includes some specific environmental priorities, and risks (Section 6). SDF: 6.4.5.1 PROTECTION OF ENVIRONMENTAL SENSITIVE AREAS. S3.2.19.2 PROTECTION OF SENSITIVE HABITATS AND CULTURAL SITES, S3.2.8 EXISTING ENVIRONMENTAL PROBLEMS; 3.2.10 URGENT ENVIRONMENTAL ISSUES. 6.4.5.3 ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROPOSALS - A. DEVELOPMENT OF MUNICIPAL OPEN SPACE SYSTEM (MOSS) -The environmental areas including environmental sensitive areas, protected areas, agricultural land etc. are indicated on Map 10.	1	IDP includes risks in EMP section and conservation areas in Environmental analysis section. SDF indicates sensitive areas, however no map in document.	1

No	Max Score	Limpopo Province	Mopani DM	Score	Greater Tzaneen LM	Score	Ba-Phalaborwa LM	Score	Maruleng LM	Score	Capricorn DM	Score	Polokwane LM	Score	Lepele Nhumpi LM	Score
4	1	Summary biodiversity maps (Score 0 -1). If maps are in IDP & SDF, Score = 1.	IDP: No. SDF maps not in IDP (yet spatial priorities map for LED in IDP). SDF maps include PA, NFEPA, river buffers.	0.5	IDP: No. SDF: Yes, MAP 4: ENVIRONMENTAL SENSITIVITY AREAS AND SLOPE ANALYSIS; but maps not provided.	0.5	IDP: No. SDF: Environmental maps but does not map sensitive environments. Text does indicate for example, rivers and floodplains as important areas. NO final SDF Map, only recommendations?	0	IDP. No. SDF: Yes, CBAs & open space network, but maps not in the document. SDF series of plans 5 & 7 - includes environmental sensitive areas, conservation areas, Drakensberg Env. Zone. Figure 20: The Kruger to Canyons Biosphere. LED includes Figure 20.	0.5	IDP. No, however a land cover map is available that indicates natural areas. SDF not available to determine CBA etc.	0.5	IDP: No map, although emphasises need to protect certain areas in Section 6. SDF: Series of environmental maps present. Map 3 indicates sensitive environments. S6.4.5.3 ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROPOSALS - A. DEVELOPMENT OF MUNICIPAL OPEN SPACE SYSTEM (MOSS) -The environmental areas including environmental sensitive areas, protected areas, agricultural land etc. are indicated on Map 10. Local POLOKWANE LSDF GREEN OPEN SPACE NETWORK/ Matrix (Bull Frog 800 m buffer).	0.5	IDP: Only conservation areas. SDF not available to assess. SDF: Yes.	1
5	1	Does the LUM Scheme include a conservation zone or at minimum consider environmental protection (Score 0-1)	Not Applicable - Dependent on local municipal LUMS.		LUMS not sourced to assess.		LUMS not accessed but exists. SDF 2008: Ba-phalaborwa Town Planning Scheme to be developed. It does however consider the environment - IDP S4.2: Protection of Land and Environment - NEMA & ECA, floodlines.		No conservation zone, but includes Protected Areas as a zone and Private Open Space (Public Open Space permits parks & sports). Includes 9.3 PROTECTION OF LAND AND THE ENVIRONMENT - NEMA	0.5	Not Applicable - LUMS not available for local municipalities to confirm.		LUMS zoning map not sourced to assess. Land Use Management Policy (2012) - Impact on the environment -is the property adjacent to a vulnerable eco-sensitive environment e.g. wetlands protected area, mining etc.		LUMS zoning map not sourced to assess.	
6	2	Climate change & mitigation measures (Score 0-2). The Score of 2 only attained if proper spatial guidelines indicated in SDF (& IDP) e.g. floodlines, buffers, high water yielding areas.	Climate change issue & research budget. SDF also refers to flood lines, river 32m buffer, wetlands & other hazards. The MD Service Delivery & Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP) 2014-2015 indicated budget for renewable energy (LED project). DM Air quality management plan not developed yet.	1.5	IDP: Yes, S18.6 - Climate change. IDP solar energy programme: Renewable Energy & Energy Efficiency (REEE) Strategy developed and approved by 2014, Floodplains in SDF, however, inclusion is not adequately represented.	1	Determining of flood areas with a return period of 1:100 years (pg 13). S4.7.3. IDP Project - LEDET to support municipalities to implement climate change toolkit. Development of low carbon economy (Annexure A, IDP). LED Section 5.2.3. Recycling and alternative Green Economy development. SDF: Surface hydrology:, The flood plains of the Letaba, Ga-Selati and Olifants	1.5	IDP S3.2 .1.1.3 Global Warming. S3.4.5.5: Alternative energy source (hydro & solar). LED Section 11: Develop renewable energy industries; Promote domestic water harvesting and grey water systems.	1	IDP: Climate change is an issue. Budget for Development of a District Climate Change adaptation strategy (pg 105). No SDF available. DM Air quality management plan developed.	1.5	IDP Section 8. Municipal SWOT Analysis, indicates climate change as a threat. Project (pg 126): support municipalities to implement climate change toolkit, but no budget. S 7.9 Off-Balance-Sheet Financing - The following are the key categories to be covered by the off balance sheet project funding: 1) Solar Energy (Energy Efficiency) Renewable Energy. SDF: Greenhouse Gases. TABLE 54:	1.5	IDP: Climate change only indicated as an environmental threat. SDF: Does not mention climate change, but provides recommendations regarding floodlines and development restrictions. No EMP or Disaster management plan to assess.	1

No	Max Score	Limpopo Province	Mopani DM	Score	Greater Tzaneen LM	Score	Ba-Phalaborwa LM	Score	Maruleng LM	Score	Capricorn DM	Score	Polokwane LM	Score	Lepele Nhumpi LM	Score
							rivers, as well as those of other smaller drainage systems,( with several occurring within the urban complex) poses a risk for development, in particular areas within the 1:100 years flood return period. But does not mention climate change.						ENVIRONMENTAL STRATEGIES AND POLICIES - Retain floodline areas as open space, irrespective of private or public ownership. Land Use Management Policy - climate change, carbon footprint, renewable energy.			
7	2	Key biodiversity legislation to demonstrate awareness for compliance (Score 0-2)	IDP: NEMA, NWA, but not NEMBA. SDF notes NEMA.	0.5	Yes. IDP EMP Section 6 (list of Acts, include e.g. NEMBA, NWA, NEMA). KPI: % compliance to the environmental legislations checklist; % of water samples that comply with SANS 0241 (not NWA, but awareness of WQ monitoring in terms of potability not pollution control for aquatic resources despite water quality issue & green drop reports indicated above).	0.5	IDP, yes. Section 4.2. NEMA, NEMBA, Limpopo Env Management Act, ECA. Awareness of water quality and quantity issues but no reference to NWA. SDF: OTHER LEGISLATION - good list - NEMA, NEMBA, NWA etc.	0.5	IDP: NEMA, NEMWA. SDF: EIA. LED: NWA (Ecological Reserve).	0.5	NEMA, NEM: AQ, NEM: WA, but not NEMBA or NWA.	0.5	IDP: Yes, all key legislation. SDF: Yes, but excludes NWA.	1	IDP: NEMA etc but no NEMBA or NWA. SDF: No.	0.5
8	1	Environmental projects (Score 0 - 1)	IDP: Yes. Environmental Awareness campaigns, Arbor Week, World Environment Day, Air Quality Awareness Campaign, Cleanup Campaign, State of School Environment Report, Wetlands Awareness, Support to K2C Biosphere Reserve, Funding of Waste Recycling Projects, Greening Limpopo EMP, EMF, climate change research etc. Biodiversity scientific Support services on biodiversity management from LEDET; NATURE RESERVE PROJECT PLAN PROJECTS (LTA/LEDET), Training of EMIs, water quality laboratory services indicated in the SDBIP. LED identifies EPWP (working for water etc.) as LED opportunity with funding. Recycling and	1	IDP: No projects, such as SOER, EMF, alien clearing, identified but includes Strategic Projects (S7.1): Environmental Health services - KPI % of compliance with Environmental Management Legislation (in relation to sustainable infrastructure), and compliance to the environmental legislations checklist although some environmental programmes (see below no. 17). A lower score as these projects are not the most effective/appropriate range of projects, especially compared with other municipalities	0.5	IDP: Yes. LEDET projects and MD (Section 3.7.3) - Man & Biosphere Reserve, Capacity building, waste, climate change toolkit. Arbor Day. SANParks project - Nursery establishment. Environmental management and education is not addressed directly within the municipal budget allocations. A lower score as these projects are not the most effective or appropriate range of projects e.g. need funding for EMF, EMP, which are indicated in the programmes section of IDP. Programmes:1)	0.5	IDP S5.2: Biosphere and Tourism Nodal Centre; K2C Support, EPWP (does not indicate project type), Greening Project. SDF Table 18: List of Priority Projects - Development Objective 1: Environment. IDP: Recycling taking place.	1	IDP: Air quality monitoring program, environmental awareness campaigns, KPA 2 includes environmental projects - SEAs, climate change research, greening, compliance, recycling, alien plant eradication. List of projects pg 166.	1	IDP: Yes. CHAPTER: 5: PROJECTS PHASE. Indicates LEDET environmental projects, and other. EMP not an identified project but is in the development phase. No EPWP environmental type jobs created but host of other. Limited environmental projects. However, IDP S6.13 Greenest Municipality Award. Recycling and water conservation is taking place.	1	IDP: Yes, several projects without budget: asbestos, recycling, waste disposal/boards, beautification. With budget (pg 116): wetland conservation, environmental management services, greening.	1

No	Max Score	Limpopo Province	Mopani DM	Score	Greater Tzaneen LM	Score	Ba-Phalaborwa LM	Score	Maruleng LM	Score	Capricorn DM	Score	Polokwane LM	Score	Lepele Nhumpi LM	Score
			water conservation is taking place.		projects. Recycling is taking place.		Environmental Management - Implement EMF, Review EMF, EMP, SOER. Low Carbon Economy; 2) Waste Management - rehabilitation of land fill sites; 3) Promote and support Tourism - Conserve environment - SOER. Recycling is taking place.									
9	2	Water quality and quantity with linkage to IDP projects (Score 0-2)	To treat waste water for consumption - Water re-use; Percentage contribution towards Green drop rating; Water Quality Management Plan; Appointment of water quality technician. IDP Project: Sanitation and water conservation & demand management plan. <b>No budget.</b>	1.5	Water Sector Plan is incorporated in the Water Services Development Plan of the District and co-operate with the Mopani District. IDP states: 'we have to ensure that the final effluent discharged into rivers does not contribute to water pollution'. Annual report indicates green drop to be applied with Wastewater management plans and wastewater quality reports. IDP S3.3: Sustainable water use (provincial intent <b>but not local issue</b> ).	1.5	Although an awareness of water quality issues is evident, no water sector plan is evident or water quality monitoring related to municipal sewage etc, although a Water service development plan (that should include sustainable supply without impacting aquatic resources). IDP EMP: To develop a public participation strategy on Sustainable water usage (although not adequate in terms of impact on ecological reserve). IDP S1.1.10.1: Uncontrolled abstraction for agricultural activities within the municipal area. BLM is not a water services authority. SDF: Water quality & quantity issue and NWA indicated. A score of 0.5 is allocated for awareness.	0.5	IDP: The municipality is responsible for water reticulation. LED Section 8.9: Present the "environmental reserve" as a sustainable development initiative. The Municipality demonstrates awareness of water quality and quantity issues, and the NWA in terms of sustainable water supply. However, no evidence of green drop reports (water quality for sewage effluent) or water quality management plan/water sector plan.	1	IDP (pg 99): To achieve 70 % compliance of wastewater treatment works effluent to General Effluent Quality standards by 2014. Section 6.7. Water Services Development Plan	1.5	IDP: Polokwane Water Sector Plan, 2011, but no evidence of green drop, although indication of sewage polluting groundwater due to lack of sewage infrastructure. Sustainable water supply in terms of NWA and reserve not evident.	0	IDP: NWA and green drop not indicated, but blue drop indicated. Sustainable water supply in terms of NWA and reserve not evident.	0

No	Max Score	Limpopo Province	Mopani DM	Score	Greater Tzaneen LM	Score	Ba-Phalaborwa LM	Score	Maruleng LM	Score	Capricorn DM	Score	Polokwane LM	Score	Lepele Nhumpi LM	Score
10	1	Environmental sustainability (Score 0 - 1)	A key priority (Section 4.2.4)/Integrated Environmental Management. Environmental management and provision of environmental management services are priority focus areas and development priorities respectively. SDF S10: Development Objective: To protect and preserve sensitive environmental areas and high potential agricultural land. S11.8 Protection of Environmental Sensitive Areas	1	IDP. Yes. PRIORITY ISSUE: SUSTAINABLE ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT & SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT. S9.1: Integrated Spatial Programme result is sustainable development. Strategic Objective: Enhance sustainable environmental management and social development	1	Key IDP Strategic Objective is environmental sustainability (Section 1.1, pg 18). Section 152 (1) of the Constitution regarding sustainability. Annual report indicates Strategic Objective - environmental sustainability, and that environmental management is a development priority. SDF: Sustainable and integrated development planning.	1	IDP Priority 10: ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT (S3.11.2). IDP S4.6: Sustainable development is outcome of Strategic Objective 'Plan for the future' (spatial rationale). IDP S3.7: Committee for 'Economic Development, Housing, Spatial planning, social services, agriculture and environmental management' exists. LED: Commitment to environmental sustainability ("world leader in sustainable development").	1	IDP key Priority: Environmental management. Sustainable development principles - S1.2.1.11 National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998).	1	IDP Section 5.3: Improved provision of basic and environmental services in a sustainable way to our communities. Section 6. Environmental Management indicates need for sustainable development. IDP indicates sustainable human settlements. IDP Vision: "The Ultimate in Innovation and Sustainable Development"	1	IDP: SDF purpose - environmental sustainability of the area. III. INTEGRATED ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PLAN. S5.3. Top Five Priority Development Focus Areas - #4. Improve environmental management. S14.2 Local Agenda 21. SDF: The sustainable use of land and other resources.	1
11	1	Environmental Management as a Key Performance Area (KPA) (Score 0 - 1)	No. However, under the KPA Basic Service Delivery & Infrastructure Development - Priority Issue: Sustainable Environmental Management and Social Development. National KPA: Environmental Sustainability and Resilience translated to DM KPA 'Plan for the Future', but this does not adequately reflect environmental planning?	0	No. However, see above.	0	No, however see above. Limited explanation of KPAs compared with previous documents.	0	No. However, see above.	0	No, however refer point above - Key priority.	0	No. Refer above.	0	No. However refer above.	0
12	3	Inclusion of EMF, biosphere reserve (& TFCA for Ba-Phalaborwa LM & Bushbuckridge LM with maximum score of 3) (Score 0-1; 0-2 or 0-3)	IDP: Financial support to Kruger to Canyons Biosphere Reserve and a reference to Letaba EMF. SDF notes K2C. <b>Due to the latter two mentioned, a score of 2 is allocated (out of 2).</b>	2	IDP: No mention of EMF, but mentions biosphere reserve. SDF: No mention of EMF or K2C biosphere reserve. <b>Although no map to identify K2C on the map. Due to IDP only mentioning K2C, a score of 0.5 is allocated (out of 2).</b>	0.5	IDP: <b>No mention of Letaba EMF.</b> LEDET providing support regarding Man and Biosphere Reserve, yet no mention of K2C BR. IDP mentions the Greater Limpopo Trans-frontier Park, and LED includes a trans-frontier park tourism development centre. SDF: No mention of Letaba EMF, but recommends municipal EMF and consideration of biosphere reserves. <b>Score of 1.5 allocated out of 3.</b>	1.5	IDP S3.1.10. K2C Biosphere-establishment of the Drakensberg Environmental Zone. SDF S3.9.1; Figure 20: The Kruger to Canyons Biosphere. <b>No mention of Letaba EMF in any documents, therefore allocated score of 1 (out of 2).</b>	1	The Olifants and Letaba EMF; & the Kruger to Canyon BR applies to the DM. IDP does not indicate either. <b>SDF not available to assess.</b>	0	Letaba EMF, K2C Biosphere applies but not mentioned in IDP. Kruger to Canyon only partially inside boundary, but not mentioned in SDF. <b>SDF: The following urgent environmental priorities and issues were identified in the Polokwane Environmental Management Framework (EMF, 2004). Allocated score of 1 due to local EMF.</b>	1	IDP: No mention of either. SDF: Predates EMF, no BR noted.	0

No	Max Score	Limpopo Province	Mopani DM	Score	Greater Tzaneen LM	Score	Ba-Phalaborwa LM	Score	Maruleng LM	Score	Capricorn DM	Score	Polokwane LM	Score	Lepele Nhumpi LM	Score
13	1	Inclusion of Protected Areas and Conservation areas (at minimum the SDF map should include these areas, while the IDP summary biodiversity map should include these areas). (Score 0-1)	Yes, PA and CA noted in IDP, but list does not appear to include all PA. SDF includes - Conservation/ Environmental Sensitive Areas •Protected Areas (SA Parks Board); & protected/conservation areas (BGIS) Presumably all included.	1	Kruger National Park & Tzaneen Nature Reserve noted in IDP, but not other PAs. Kruger National Park and Nature Reserves noted in SDF, but not all PAs, therefore presumably on SDF Map. A lower score allocated because lack of several PA (compared with BGIS PA).	0.5	IDP S1.1.8. Protecde Areas and Conservancies. SDF: Map 7: Protected Areas & Conservancies.	1	IDP mentions nature reserves. SDF Figure 19: Maruleng LM – Protected Areas and Conservation Land Use.Private Nature Reserves (CA), and the K2C biosphere reserve included in SDF, but no maps to assess. Does not appear to include the Bulwer Nature Reserve (PA). A score of 1 is allocated as an individual PA map is included in the SDF.	1	IDP: The land cover map indicates nature reserves and conservation areas, which is presumably contained in the SDF. Table 69: Nature Reserves and Tourism Attraction Points in CDM	1	IDP S6.9 Conservation: Reserves. Source of data is SDF. SDF contains Nature Conservation Areas - appear to be PA and CA.	1	IDP Map.18: Conservation Areas, includes Nature Reserves and Conservation Areas. Appears to include CA, but missing a PA. SDF: No maps, but no mention of Nature Reserves etc.	0.5
14	1	Inclusion of National Protected Areas Expansion Strategy Focus Areas	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	SDF Figure 40.1: Proposed/ additional protected areas as derived from the Limpopo Protected Areas Expansion Strategy (S4.4), presumably the NPAES (no map to verify).	1	IDP: No. No SDF to assess.	0	IDP: No. SDF: No.	0	IDP: No. SDF 2007 predates NPAES.	0
15	1	Inclusion of spatial biodiversity priority areas - CBA, ESA, NFEPA, systematic biodiversity plans based. (Score 0-1)	SDF S11.8: Protection of Environmental Sensitive Area - Conservation/ Environmental Sensitive Areas:•Protected Areas (SA Parks Board),•32m development buffer area around rivers, as per the EIA regulations. •Wetlands and protected/conservation areas (from BGIS and national parks). NFEPA wetlands included on map therefore allocated 0.5?	0.5	Unknown, no SDF maps, but no mention of CBA, ESA, NFEPA, provincial systematic plans presumably means these were not incorporated.	0	IDP and SDF: No.	0	SDF Review 2014: Figure 20: Maruleng LM – Limpopo Conservation Plan-Key Categories and SDF S3.4 ENVIRONMENTAL FEATURES & S3.4.3 CRITICAL BIODIVERSITY AREAS (LCP includes NFEPA data although no mention thereof). No Map in document to assess adequately although Plan 5 & 6 show environmentally sensitive areas etc. Not in IDP.	0.5	IDP: No. No SDF to assess.	0	IDP: No. SDF 2010 predates C-Plan v1.	0	IDP: No. SDF 2007 predates C-Plan.	0
16	1	Inclusion of land use / development guidelines specific to CBA, ESA, NFEPA, systematic plans (Score 0-1)	No CBA etc, although SDF states 'care was taken to isolate all areas with high biodiversity so that neither urban development nor agricultural activities will encroach there'; & Wetlands to be protected. LUMS must be developed still. Although specific guidelines not included, protection is intended. NFEPA	0.5	No. Refer above.	0	IDP & SDF: No.	0	No. Refer above. Although SDF S4.3 MARULENG LM SDF DEVELOPMENT PRINCIPLES includes environmental protection, which will include the CBA, specific land use guidelines are not provided. A score of 0.5 is allocated as it is clear that CBA should be protected but	0.5	IDP: No. No SDF to assess.	0	IDP: No. SDF 2010 predates C-Plan v1.	0	IDP: No. SDF predates C-Plan.	0

No	Max Score	Limpopo Province	Mopani DM	Score	Greater Tzaneen LM	Score	Ba-Phalaborwa LM	Score	Maruleng LM	Score	Capricorn DM	Score	Polokwane LM	Score	Lepele Nhumpi LM	Score
			Wetlands from BGIS therefore 0.5 score allocated.						specific guidelines are not evident.							
17	2	Inclusion of appropriate natural resource management issues in IDP, LED, SDF; and environmental programmes (Score 0 - 2)	Water & air pollution, aliens, deforestation in IDP (Refer environmental drivers). Appropriate projects included (point 8). IDP Strategies - Programmes: Water Services - To treat waste water for consumption - Develop and implement strategies on how waste water will be treated so as to ensure the reuse thereof. Percentage contribution towards Green drop rating. SDF includes issues per area.	2	See environmental drivers, with some appropriate programmes (biodiversity related). IDP S12.12: REEE programme (alternative energy), S9.1: Integrated Human Settlements (sustainable development objective); Integrated spatial development (sustainable development objective). S9.2: Programme - Solar Energy, Environmental services, Disaster management (loss of lives & infrastructure), EPWP (type of project not indicated e.g. alien clearing).	1	See environmental drivers, with several appropriate programmes (biodiversity specific). IDP Programme: Environmental Management - linked to EMF, EMP and SOER. 'Promote tourism' with conservation as one objective & linkage to SOER. LED S3.12 State of Environment, & environmental pressures, SANParks Working for Water assisting with alien clearing. LED Programme 5.2.3. Recycling and alternative Green Economy development. S7.3.6.: The Premier's greening programme to combat deforestation, which is also included in IDP. See SDF issues - criteria 21.1.	1.5	See environmental drivers, but not appropriate IDP programmes (biodiversity specific). S4.6: IDP Programme: Environmental Health Management - Development and implementation of environmental policies. Total environmental quality management. LED programmes S8: 'Define Maruleng as a place a global leadership in sustainable development' and S5.8: Eco-tourism and Adventure tourism development (which must identify projects still - these might include more conservation areas identified?).	1	Refer issues below and programmes/projects above. However the lack of environmental priorities in IDP (see above) reduces score.	1.5	Refer issues below and programmes/projects above. SDF 3.2.8 EXISTING ENVIRONMENTAL PROBLEMS. Lack of adequate programmes.	1.5	Refer issues below and programmes/projects above. However the lack of CBA & adequate programmes to combat identified issues reduces score. (One LEDET tourism project in SDF)	1.5

No	Max Score	Limpopo Province	Mopani DM	Score	Greater Tzaneen LM	Score	Ba-Phalaborwa LM	Score	Maruleng LM	Score	Capricorn DM	Score	Polokwane LM	Score	Lepele Nhumpi LM	Score
18	1	Inclusion of ecosystem services (Score 0-1)	IDP & SDF identifies important wetlands, flood prone areas, rivers and wetlands but the word ecosystem services. No maps to assess all areas included. SDF presumably includes the wetlands, 32m buffer in the maps. IDP states 'Water is Life – Mopani Rivers and Dams are the Source of Life in the District for the Environment, People and Economy' showing some acknowledgement of ecosystem services. Not adequate inclusion in other documents.	0.5	SDF indicates importance of wetlands & excludes floodplains for development, but the word ecosystem services or the value of these for such purposes not noted, while projects not indicated to delineate areas. <b>No maps indicating wetlands.</b>	0.5	Compliance with the Water Act in terms of the determining of 1:100 flood areas. Protect and use river systems for passive and active open space as well as for locating infrastructure services; as biodiversity corridors and greenbelts through the municipality area that need to be treated sensitively. Natural drainage courses and ridges have broadly been identified as urban open space that requires protection and management. Unplanned encroachment into the open space areas must be monitored and managed. Areas prone to flooding are not clearly demarcated (IDP S1.1). <b>However, not adequate inclusion and no mention of wetlands, water yield areas or ecosystem services values.</b> SDF considers wetlands, rivers etc.	0.5	LED: When the environment is compromised and does not deliver the provisioning services (clean air, fertile, soil, clean water, crops and animals) that it should, the economy suffers. SDF development guidelines require 1:100 year flood line. IDP recognizes flooding threats. SDF: Strategic Water Source Areas (Figure 18a), <b>which require protection.</b> Limiting urban development in floodplain areas and against ridges (vital rainwater run-off areas). <b>However, not adequate inclusion and no mention of wetlands, buffers etc. in documents in terms of clear land use guidelines. Fairly good but improvement required.</b>	0.5	IDP: Ecosystem services concept not noted. Acknowledgement that agriculture depends on rivers. <b>However, no maps or guidelines to assess appropriate inclusion.</b>	0	IDP S6: Ecosystem services provide physical resources such as clean air, water, food, medicinal plants, wood as well as the aesthetic value. Buffer Zone along the Sand River of 100m. Mankweng G Ext Settlement is on a flood line and waterlog area, relocation proposed. SDF: High production aquifers occur in the Polokwane/Seshego area as well as the Sebageng and Molepo areas. Includes hydrology on maps, protection of dolomite, buffers etc., but not adequate in terms of protecting high water yielding areas.	0.5	IDP: Concept of ecosystem services not featured. Wetland conservation is a project. Floods indicated as a priority threat (disaster management). <b>However, no SDF maps or detailed guidelines to assess appropriate inclusion.</b>	0
19.1	1	Key environmental drivers (Score 0-1)	Waste, air & water pollution, deforestation, soil erosion, invasive alien plants, fire, informal settlements, IEM, disaster risk. Also refer 2.10.6.6 IDENTIFIED MAJOR DISASTER RISKS: Climate change, fire, dam failure, acid mine drainage, hazardous waste, environmental degradation, new developments (floodlines), severe weather (floodlines, protecting water	1	IDP: S18.6 - Land, Air & Water pollution, Important biodiversity, climate change, non-compliance to legislation; including illegal occupation of land and veld fires. SDF: S2.9 SEA: Soil erosion, Water scarcity, lack of wetland conservation, sewage infrastructure (pit, french, under-capacitated) &	1	IDP: Environmental degradation: Air pollution, Deforestation, Soil pollution, Siltation and Land degradation. IDP S1.1: Loss of natural areas, deforestation, alien eradication, water quality & quantity, deterioration in groundwater quality, air pollution. Annual	1	IDP S3.2.1.1. Global warming, air & water pollution, deforestation, veld fires, soil erosion, Chemical spills and hazardous accidents, overgrazing.	1	Deforestation, Overgrazing, Soil Erosion, Informal Settlements, Water pollution, Land reform, Veld Fires, Chemical Spills And Hazardous Accidents, Natural and man-made disaster, poaching and waste disposal, Global Warming and Climate Change, Air quality, Water resources, Waste Management	1	Waste Management, Mine and Industrial site rehabilitation; Sink-holes, Depletion of Soil nutrients; Soil erosion; Reduction in scenic value; Deforestation; Overgrazing; Invasive aliens plants; Unprotected Sensitive plant communities; Borrow pits; Sand mining.	1	IDP: Agricultural - crop and livestock-farming and wildlife conservation practices. - Commissioning of new mining activities. - Overgrazing -that leads to vegetation composition imbalances and soil erosion. - Deforestation due to chopping of trees for firewood and poor affordability to	1

No	Max Score	Limpopo Province	Mopani DM	Score	Greater Tzaneen LM	Score	Ba-Phalaborwa LM	Score	Maruleng LM	Score	Capricorn DM	Score	Polokwane LM	Score	Lepele Ntshimpi LM	Score
			sources). No mention of water abstraction and impact on aquatic resources or ecological reserve?		associated groundwater pollution, waste pollution, hazardous waste, urban sprawl, pollution of Great Letaba, alien invasive species, development in env. sensitive areas.		report (2009/10): drought/water shortages, lack of EMF (additional). SDF: Loss of natural areas, Deforestation, Alien eradication, Water quality and quantity, Deterioration in groundwater quality.								access electricity may lead to loss of habitat and sensitive species. - Shortage of water due to lack of major rivers and poor rainfall. - poor water quality due to high concentration of total dissolved solid (TDS) and nitrates. - Urban sprawl, indiscriminate change of land uses and unplanned settlements. - Uncontrolled veld fires. - Air quality threatened by closed asbestos mines in the east. - Poaching that threatens sensitive and endangered species. - loss of biodiversity due to heavy degradation by in places of cultivation, mining and urbanization and as a result of invasion of alien vegetation and indigenous microphyllous trees. - Climate change. LED includes some of the issues. SDF: The large percentage of people using wood for cooking must be a concern as the cutting of trees leads to deforestation and soil erosion, but no issues section in environmental analysis.	

No	Max Score	Limpopo Province	Mopani DM	Score	Greater Tzaneen LM	Score	Ba-Phalaborwa LM	Score	Maruleng LM	Score	Capricorn DM	Score	Polokwane LM	Score	Lepele Nhumpi LM	Score
19.2	1	Key social drivers (Score 0-1)	Lack of housing, good education, water, sanitation, health services, alternative energy	1	Poverty, inadequate water & sanitation, housing backlog, none availability of land for development, HIV&AIDs, Xenophobia, cultural diversity, political climate, gender inequality, crime, lack of access to higher education, lack of school libraries, inequality for disabled, rural electrification backlogs, waste disposal	1	Water supply & sanitation backlog, lack of electrification or re-furbishment, waste management backlog, poverty, limited health services, Need for reducing incidences of malaria, diarrhea and other diseases; HIV & AIDS, TB and Malaria; orphans due to HIV/AIDS, Housing backlog & poor quality RDP houses, library backlogs, lack of sporting facilities.	1	Water shortages, housing backlog & quality of RDP houses, unemployment, Shortage of Educational and recreational facilities, Electrification of extensions, waste disposal.	1	Backlog in water supply, sanitation, electrification, education, poor waste management, inadequate transport system, lack of adequate sporting facilities & libraries, crime. Inadequate disaster management, public health services under pressure, AIDs & other poverty related illnesses, poverty.	1	Inequality, Income inequality, growth in population, backlog in infrastructure (water, electricity, sanitation, health services, housing, roads, waste facilities, educational and recreational facilities), Lack of sustainable water sources.	1	IDP: S5.2. Top Five Priority Needs - 1. Water and Sanitation; 2. Roads and storm water, 3. Housing; 4. Electricity; 5. Health. IDP: Poverty and lack of basic services	1
20	1	EIA and other regulations (Score 0-1)	IDP Section 2.7.9. SDF aware of NEMA: EIA.	1	Yes. IDP Section 18 and EMP (Section 6).	1	IDP S1.1.12.2: Approved EIA's and conditions of approvals - The municipality has no section which deals strictly with environmental management issues. This include the review function of EIA's and not an authorising function. <b>Although the municipality is aware of requirements, management, as indicated, is inadequate (therefore lower scoring).</b> SDF: Indicates need for EIA.	0.5	SDF indicates EIA requirements. IDP indicates requirement to fulfill environmental legislation (see point 17 below). LUMS notes requirement of NEMA EIA. LED does not mention EIA.	0.5	IDP: Yes. Environmental officers for compliance. IDP Table 86: EIA, BA, EMP indicated.	1	IDP: EIA regulations noted, as well as MEC comments on EIA approval and all EIA requirements for projects indicated. Land Use Management Policy - EIA requirements.	1	IDP: EIA requirement indicated for projects. NEMA included. NWA not included. SDF: No.	0.5

No	Max Score	Limpopo Province	Mopani DM	Score	Greater Tzaneen LM	Score	Ba-Phalaborwa LM	Score	Maruleng LM	Score	Capricorn DM	Score	Polokwane LM	Score	Lepele Nhumpi LM	Score
21	2	Manage disaster risk (Score 0-2) For a Score 2 to be allocated there should be strategic identification of flood prone areas in SDF (on a map), as a minimum.	IDP 6.2.12 Disaster Management Plan (Approved 30 September 2009); Recognition of climate change, flooding and floodlines, soil erosion. IDP project identified: hazard, vulnerability and risk analysis for the District. Project 3 under Risks: Risk assessment. No budget. Project 9 under Disaster Management: Review of the Disaster management plan vulnerable risk hazard analysis - budget provided. SDF includes disaster risk areas (flooding, floodlines, drought areas etc.), but no map to indicate spatial zone indicated. <b>LEDET should assist with floodlines?</b>	1.5	IDP S22 indicates floods. Disaster Management Plan is a strategic project with KPI, & included component of EMP. S7 Disaster Risk Plan, with zoning and land use control (flood protection), as well as 'Protection of forests, wetlands', as mitigation measures. SDF does not note excluding flood lines as a development guideline, although floodplains should be excluded from development in Conservation Areas and Public Open Space (S4.6.6). Soil erosion and steep slopes included as non developable areas. IDP also notes floodlines in relation to non-compliance (S18.6f). <b>LEDET should assist with floodlines?</b>	1	IDP Section 4.10: Disaster Management Plan. IDP Section 1.4.12 - Floods. Importance of floodlines but areas prone to flooding are not clearly demarcated (IDP S1.1). LUMS - No building permitted in floodwater or 1:100 (IDP S4.2). LEDET climate change toolkit is an IDP Project. <b>However, mitigation measures not adequately included and understanding of climate change not clear. LEDET should assist with floodlines?</b> SDF: Indicates importance of flood lines etc, but no mention of climate change.	1	IDP S3.11.2: Municipal Priority 6 = EMERGENCY SERVICES & DISASTER MANAGEMENT. Programme S4.6: EMERGENCY SERVICES & DISASTER MANAGEMENT. IDP S7.13 Disaster Risk Management Plan. IDP Table 29: depicts major disaster risks prevalent in the municipality e.g. flooding. SDF requires 1:100 year floodline in certain developments. <b>However, mitigation measures not adequately included and understanding of climate change not clear. LEDET should assist with floodlines?</b>	1	IDP Section 6.2. Capricorn District Disaster Management & Section 6.3. Capricorn District Disaster Risk management Plan. Main Disaster hazards identified in the District are; Strong Winds, Flash Floods, Drought, Epidemics, Veld fires, Transport Emergencies. <b>No SDF to assess.</b>	1	IDP Section 8 Disaster Management. However, no mention of flood lines and buffer requirements. Strategic Map. Source: Polokwane Disaster Management Plan, 2010. SDF: Climate change, No development within 32 meters buffer zone from the edge of a riparian zone of a river, stream and wetland or the 1:100 year flood line. Land Use Management Policy - environment and risk adverse requirements.	1.5	IDP S14.3. Disaster Management. Flooding and climate change are threats. Section V. DISASTER MANAGEMENT PLAN developed to deal with floods, deforestation, veld fires etc. Section VI. STORM WATER CONTROL PLAN - for prioritisation of the two high risk areas around Mathibela and Lebokwagomo (vulnerable to flood strikes). <b>Both documents not sourced to assess appropriate inclusion.</b> SDF: Only indicates importance of flood lines and preventing development.	1
22	3	Extent of integration / cross-referencing (Score 0 -3)	Letaba EMF noted for planning in IDP, SDF, CRDP in IDP. LED, SDF and IDP in CRDP. SDF cross references IDP (projects), disaster management plan & mentions CRDP. Lacking indication of all IDP projects spatially (most SDFs) - missing chapters though.	2	SDF integrated into IDP (Section E.1) and indicated for review. SDF references IDP and Section 4.8 - The IDP projects for the 2007/2008 financial year have been screened in terms of spatial impact and whether implementation would contribute to the achievement of the spatial objectives of the SDF and support the attainment of the desired spatial form of the municipality. Integrated Sustainable Rural Development Strategy (ISRDS) is referenced in IDP, which the CRDP supports. SDF S3.1.2. The Integrated Sustainable Rural Development Strategy (ISRDS).	2	The SDF & LED is cross referenced to the IDP, but no maps. Rural development initiatives (IDP S1.5.4.4). The LED Section 1 makes no reference to the environment. LED Section 2.2.7. The comprehensive Rural Development Programme Framework. SDF: References IDP and LED.	1	The SDF & LED is cross referenced to the IDP, but no maps. SDF S4.3: Maruleng IDP Principles and Strategies. SDF Review: S2.2.1 IDP RELATED PRIORITY ISSUES & S2.2.2 ISSUES ADDRESSED. The IDP & SDF are cross referenced to the LED. The LED however does not cross reference to IDP environmental analysis/issues (e.g. deforestation, alien vegetation) & how these can grow economy (e.g. EPWP - alien clearing) although key thrusts include (S18.1) 'Define Maruleng as a place a global leadership in sustainable development' & 'Developing a sustainable	2	IDP section 6.1. Capricorn Spatial Development Framework (SDF 2011-2015), which also indicates the CRDP. IDP S6.11. Environmental Management Plan. IDP S6.4. LED Strategy. In other words, the IDP cross references well but other planning documents not available to assess. Annual report limited in cross-referencing.	2	IDP references Environmental management, SDF, LED and national CRDP. Referencing of IDP, CRDP and LED in SDF.	2	IDP references SDF, LED, EMP and national CRDP. LED references IDP and SDF. <b>Other documents (e.g. disaster management, EMP) not available to assess. Therefore assessment only based on IDP, SDF &amp; LED referencing.</b>	2

No	Max Score	Limpopo Province	Mopani DM	Score	Greater Tzaneen LM	Score	Ba-Phalaborwa LM	Score	Maruleng LM	Score	Capricorn DM	Score	Polokwane LM	Score	Lepele Nhumpi LM	Score
					However, the MD CRDP not indicated as it was only initiated in 2009 (date of SDF).				development strategy' with environmental protection quite evident in the document. SDF S3.1.4 COMPREHENSIVE RURAL DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME (CRDP) - national not MD document.							
23	2	Alignment of overlapping municipalities - Environmental issues and management (Score 0 -2)	IDP alignment (IDP Technical committee). SDF = guide to local municipalities. LED to be aligned with LM. Bazisa Technical Waste Solutions developing an Integrated Waste Management Plan. Poverty alleviation initiatives. Disaster Management Centre. Section 88(1) of the Municipal Systems Act (2000) requires cooperation. Common Performance Management System. District-wide Performance Audit Committee. To adopt a comprehensive integrated reporting system linking performance of local municipalities to the district municipality. Recognition that DM does not coordinate effectively enough though.	1.5	IDP Technical Committee indicated for alignment with DM and Provincial government. For the most part, looking at the environmental and social issues, including DM projects included, alignment appears to be relatively good.	1.5	The IDP Process Plan is in line with the Mopani District Municipality's IDP Framework. IDP S1.8.2: Mopani District Municipality has appointed a shared Audit Committee that audits all local municipalities in the District. IDP S4: Currently there is a lack of co-ordination between the municipality, MDM and Sector Departments that negatively impacts on infrastructure maintenance and upgrading. For the most part, looking at the environmental and social issues, including DM projects included, alignment appears to be relatively good.	1.5	IDP water & sanitation alignment with DM. SDF Section 7.3.3.3 Co-ordination with adjoining local authorities. Some environmental issues and most social issues are aligned. For the most part, looking at the environmental and social issues, including DM projects included, alignment appears to be relatively good.	1.5	IDP SA1: Integration: The district interacted with local municipalities and sector departments to ensure that plans were integrated. IDP Section 1.5: Alignment of IDP, Budget and PMS activities of the district with those of the local municipalities. IDP notes LM issues in Section 2.3.2. See environmental issues compared to DM.	1.5	IDP & BUDGET Time Table includes District. IDP: The District Mayor's IGR Forum shall monitor and ensure compliance to the District IDP Framework. See environmental issues compared to DM.	1.5	IDP: Awareness of district role in alignment, usage and comparison of district data. The SDF is aligned to the NSDP, PSDF and District SDF. See environmental issues compared to DM.	1.5

No	Max Score	Limpopo Province	Mopani DM	Score	Greater Tzaneen LM	Score	Ba-Phalaborwa LM	Score	Maruleng LM	Score	Capricorn DM	Score	Polokwane LM	Score	Lepele Nhumpi LM	Score
24	1	Monitoring & evaluation (Score 0-1)	IDP Strength = Effective Monitoring and Evaluation; M&E of IDP project implementation. Reporting indicators monitor SDF & CRDP implementation, & IDP review. IDP, SDF review & implementation are identified as projects in IDP. Environmental Management Advisory forum - management of environmental projects. SDF: No monitoring or review recommendations.	0.5	SDF review indicated as project in IDP; and IDP Strategic Planning Workshop to review the strategic intent of Council. SDF has a monitoring and evaluation system with guidelines. IDP S20 Integrating and Performance Monitoring & Evaluation Framework indicated (but not reviewed since 2002/3). IDP - Consultants have been appointed for the development of a Monitoring and Evaluation framework for the LED strategy. IDP S6.3 EMPr § Monitor & evaluate once a year compliance to relevant environmental legislation and regulations; § Environmental inputs in all contracts and projects by 30/06 of each year; § Monitor the implementation of the following plans: Integrated Waste Management Plan; Water sector plan; Infrastructural provision plan; Transport plan; Disaster Management plan. SDF: S5: MONITORING AND EVALUATION	1	IDP Section 3.4.3 on Projects: SDF, LUM Scheme Review. Performance Management is a Programme under KPA: Good Governance and Public Participation Stakeholder inclusion. Service Delivery & Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP) is the annual implementation plan of the IDP - service delivery targets and projects can be monitored and tracked and early warning signs of non-performance identified. LED Chapter 8: Monitoring & Evaluation. SDF: No monitoring of SDF therefore score lowered.	0.5	IDP S5.1: Review of the 2007 SDF & LUMS; S5.5: IDP Review & Update of LUMS.; S5.9: Disaster Risk Management Review.IDP Project: Internal auditing. SDF: S5.1 IMPLEMENTATION MONITORING AND EVALUATION GUIDELINES.	1	IDP Table 73. District Monitoring and Evaluation Forum; S2.5.5 Performance Management System; Table 82: Lack of monitoring the implementation of policies; Inadequate monitoring and evaluation; Lack of integration of programmes with other stakeholders. Although M&E systems evident, not adequate as indicated in IDP Swot Analysis (Section 2.7). IDP: Monitoring implementation of SDF projects, with budget.	0.5	IDP S9 Key Themes to becoming a Smart City - 19. Implemented the Monitoring and Evaluation (M&E) Systems. Disaster Management KPA 5: Monitoring, Evaluation and Improvement. S6.1: Municipal Transformation and Institutional Development - Strategic Objective 3: Improved efficiency of planning, monitoring, evaluation and reporting. Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP) monitors organizational performance. Performance Management System (PMS) Manager and Organisational PMS Framework. <b>Weakness: Unimplemented performance management system.</b> SDF does not appear to have a recommended monitoring programme.	0.5	IDP S12.8. Performance Management System (PMS). Review of key documents in indicators (3. STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES AND PERFORMANCE INDICATORS). SDF: S6.3.7 Land Development - Formulate criteria for monitoring and evaluation of programmes/ projects initiated on this basis. The management (e.g. implementation, review, monitoring, etc.) of the LNSDF as a part of the integrated development planning process must be a priority.	1
25	1	Evidence of financial capacity (Score 0-1)	Yes. IDP, SDF & other environmental projects have a budget. Budget for LED projects available.	1	No environmental projects indicated, and although <i>programmes</i> are evident no budget indicated. Annual report indicates to increase jobs under EPWP but not clear what activities. Annual Report does not indicate any budget for	0	Environmental projects budget, but limited projects. The Annual Budget shows budget for the strategic objective - Sustain the environment.	0.5	K2C Support project budget. Job creation through EPWP budget (although job type not indicated). Tourism related projects for Nature Reserves (e.g. Lekgalameetse game reserve DEA & LEDET funding). Greening Project under Special Programmes.	0.5	Yes, IDP indicates budget for various projects.	1	Yes, IDP indicates budget for some projects but not all, for example LEDET climate change has no budget.	0.5	IDP: Budget for some projects but no budget for others.	0.5

No	Max Score	Limpopo Province	Mopani DM	Score	Greater Tzaneen LM	Score	Ba-Phalaborwa LM	Score	Maruleng LM	Score	Capricorn DM	Score	Polokwane LM	Score	Lepele Nhumpi LM	Score
					environmental protection.											
26	1	Evidence of environmental staff capacity (Score 0-1)	No. WDM Wide Issue: Provision of environmental management services	0	No.	0	IDP: No. BM does not have an environmental section which deals with environmental issues, although other sections within the municipality, such as Parks and Recreation, Town Planning and Health and Safety section fulfil this role as needed (pg 18 IDP). IDP: Environmental management and education is not addressed directly within the municipal budget allocations. LED: It has become critical that the BM incorporate an environmental co-ordinator.	0	No, despite importance of environmental management raised, no dedicated staff evident.	0	IDP: Four officials have been designated as environmental management inspectors in order to deal with compliance and enforcement of environmental legislations. Portfolio Committee: Development Planning and Environmental Management Services	1	Portfolio Committee (Councillors): Waste & Environment, however no environmental associated directorate or indication of environmental staff capacity / constraints. SDF: Table 5: Guidelines for Environmental Implementation Plans - RECOMMENDS: Effective and co-ordinated environmental management (dedicated team of individuals).	0	3.3. COMMUNITY SERVICES DEPARTMENT - directorate for environmental planning & protection etc. However, dedicated environmental manager is not evident.	0.5
27	1	Key institutional issues (Score 0-1). A score of 1 is allocated if institutional issues recognize environmental element/climate change.	Staff capacity constraints, insufficient office space. Management of information NB to improve coordination and alignment. Lack of baseline information hampers planning and progress in service delivery. Lack of capacity within local municipalities. Integration between directorates is needed as well as the implementation of Institutional (Organisational) Performance Management. <b>No dedicated environmental staff – indicated above.</b>	1	Lack of staff capacity (shortage of personnel), building space (& condition of municipal buildings) and equipment (e.g. laptops), staff skill capacity. Uncoordinated planning for IDP implementation. Other includes, e.g. (a)The ambiguous institutional arrangements between the local Government And Housing department and the municipality in terms of technical and financial administration and project monitoring of RDP/PHP programme poses a confusion in terms of clarification of roles and responsibilities. (b) Some committees not sitting leading to the municipality taking time to	0.5	Ineffective Contract management. Poor Revenue collection. Inadequate Maintenance and development of infrastructure. Poor Stakeholder management. Inadequate internal controls. Ineffective project management, monitoring, evaluation and implementation. Inadequate succession planning (HR). Inadequate communication mechanisms. High Staff Turnover. Lack of environmental management (identified constraint Section 4). IDP Section 4: The establishment	1	IDP S7.4. Lack of education and skills, lack of infrastructure, lack of municipal capacity & access to funding. S7.14: High staff turn-over. LED: The institutional environment under which businesses operate in Maruleng is undermined by uncertainty. LED: Complicated institutional environment governing water allocation. Annual Report: Inability to retain scarce skilled personnel, Inadequate planning and coordination amongst relevant stakeholders (human settlement), Data loss and system failure, Non compliance to Supply Chain Management regulations, Fraud & corruption,	0.5	• Each department is operating in silos; • Poor interdepartmental collaboration; • Lack of clearly defined responsibilities; • Lack of monitoring the implementation of policies; • Lack of adherence to service standards; • Inadequate monitoring and evaluation; • Lack of integration of programmes with other stakeholders; • Insufficient funds; • Lack of forward planning; • Inconsistencies in submission of records to registry; • Lack of recovery of losses; • High vacancy rate; • Lack of enforcement of by-laws; • Late responsive time for breakdowns; •	1	Unstable institutional environment which has led to low staff morale and dissatisfaction thus negatively affecting level of service delivery. S2.7 Swot analysis: Inadequate staffing, Ineffective skills development programme, Dysfunctional IT system • Non – compliance to regulations, Unqualified staff • Inadequate office space, Poor Intergovernmental Relations structures. SDF: See above.	0.5	IDP S12.8: In-Depth Analysis and Key Findings on Good Governance Constraints - § non compliance to legislation, systems and policies governing municipal operations. 13.4.3. OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY § Shortage of staff; § Skills gap § Lack of electronic management system; ø lack of facilities and staff to deal with HIV / AIDS; too little budget ato fund coordination of special focus programmes; ø no integrated strategy or plan for matters relating to gender, youth, children and disabled. <b>In-Depth Analysis and Key Findings on Financial Viability –</b>	0.5

No	Max Score	Limpopo Province	Mopani DM	Score	Greater Tzaneen LM	Score	Ba-Phalaborwa LM	Score	Maruleng LM	Score	Capricorn DM	Score	Polokwane LM	Score	Lepele Nhumpi LM	Score
					appoint service providers. <b>No environmental staff.</b>		of an Environmental Management Forum (is still needed). Environmental education and awareness within the municipality is very low. The municipality relies on outside stakeholders to do this function, e.g. the mines. The human capital that exists within the municipality needs to be explored and maximised. <b>Climate change toolkit from LEDET.</b> LED: Lack of environmental management and transport planning capacity. It has become critical that the BM incorporate an environmental co-ordinator. Annual Report: Shortage of sufficiently skilled staff; Inability of the Municipality to attract and retain skilled and competent staff; Inadequate application of performance management systems. SDF: joint decision making forum on land development with land owners and province.		Ineffective asset management. <b>No dedicated environmental staff.</b>		Incomplete and abandoned projects; • Loss of documents, non-adherence to records management file plan; • Possible losses and claims; • Ineffectiveness and failure to meet deadlines; • Skills gap for transferred staff; • Inadequate internal training. Environmental staff present therefore score 1 allocation.				Constraints: § Low rate of revenue collection, § No programme to encourage consumers to pay for services; § Lack of powers and functions on water services; § Non adherence to procurement plan; § Lack of suppliers' database; § Lack of monitoring of budget performance; § Shortage of funds for service delivery programmes; § Creditors not paid within 30 days; § Lack of budget management system (i.e. no specific section on general institutional issues/weaknesses).	
28	1	Adequate stakeholder engagement (LEDET, SANParks, Working for Water) (Score 0-1)	IDP: Project - NATURE RESERVE PROJECT PLAN PROJECTS - LEDET & LTA (Section 4.6.1). S2.10.7 MDM STAKEHOLDER ANALYSIS. No SANParks projects despite KNP in MDM, and NPAES focus areas <b>(requires SANParks/SANBI to become proactively involved in IDP/SDF?)</b> .	0.5	IDP Project - Development of Phase 2 for Khalanga Royal Lodge by LEDET. IDP S7.2.1 IDP Representative Forum - parastatal not included (would include SANParks, SANBI, although KNP not in GTM, NPAES focus areas are). <b>(Requires SANParks/SANBI to</b>	0.5	Appears to be good stakeholder inclusion e.g. SANParks, LEDET, District M, although the IDP states 'The requirement to have proper management of Stakeholder Relations including sustainable forums with such relevant stakeholders' and	0.5	Appears to be good stakeholder inclusion based on projects e.g. LEDET, District. IDP Representative Forum (S1.4 Table 2) includes sectors and parastatals. S4.6: Conduct stakeholder analysis. KNP not in MLM jurisdiction, although NPAES focus areas are.	1	Appears to be relatively good, although the swot analysis states inadequate stakeholder inclusion.	0.5	Appears to be relatively good, based inclusion of Departments in projects section (but no Water Affairs projects). EPWP indicated but no Working for Water Programmes. Strategic planning - sector departments. DWAF indicated as a water service provider.	0.5	IDP: S 12.8. Performance Management System (PMS) - Poor community/ stakeholders participation in meetings.	0.5

No	Max Score	Limpopo Province	Mopani DM	Score	Greater Tzaneen LM	Score	Ba-Phalaborwa LM	Score	Maruleng LM	Score	Capricorn DM	Score	Polokwane LM	Score	Lepele Nhumpi LM	Score
					become proactively involved in IDP/SDF?)		Poor Stakeholder management.									
29		Municipal biodiversity specific documents														
29.1	1	Municipal BSP / Cons Plan (Score 0-1). Provide references to provincial biodiversity plans & incorporation into final desired spatial outcome	No reference to Limpopo C-Plan v1 (2011) & v2 (2013) included, only NFEPA and PA. Final maps appear to include important environmental areas of analysis component.	0	No reference to Limpopo C-Plan v1 (2011) & v2 (2013) included. No SDF maps to assess.	0	No reference to Limpopo C-Plan v1 (2011) & v2 (2013) included. SDF: Environmental maps but does not map sensitive environments. Text does indicate for example, rivers and floodplains as important areas. No final SDF Map, only recommendations?	0	Limpopo C-Plan included - SDF 2014: S3.4.3 CRITICAL BIODIVERSITY AREAS. Not sure if 2011 or 2013 version, presumably 2013. No maps to assess but appears that the CBAs are being protected, no mention of ESAs though.	0	IDP: No reference to C-Plan. SDF not available to determine CBA etc.	0	IDP: No. SDF: No. Environmental sensitive areas of Map 3 indicated in Map 4 - final SDF map.	0	IDP: No. SDF: MCBP not mentioned and no maps in document to assess.	0
29.2	1	EMF (Score 0-1)	Not developed to date. Refer below 29.6.	0	No EMF.	0	Not developed to date. Refer below 29.6.	0	No EMF.	0	IDP: No.	0	SDF references a Polokwane Environmental Management Framework (EMF, 2004).	1	IDP: No.	0
29.3	1	EMP (Score 0-1)	Not developed to date. Refer below 29.6.	0	EMP 2012/2013. EMP Section 6 of Final IDP.	1	Not developed to date. Refer below 29.6.	0	Not developed to date. Refer below 29.6.	0	Yes, IDP S6.11 Environmental Management Plan for all LMs but not a DM specific plan or programme.	0.5	IDP: 6.14 Major Environmental Achievements - Finalizing the submission of a Environmental Management Plan	1	IDP Section 6 EMP.	1
29.4	1	SoER (Score 0-1)	No.	0	Not developed to date. Refer below 31.6.		LED S1.6.5.17. State of the environment: The report is over 5 years old and must be reviewed. Refer below 31.6. SDF: Mentions SOER.	1	No.	0	No.	0	IDP: State of the Environment Report, and the Environmental Strategic Framework report has been developed.	1	IDP: No.	0
29.5	1	SEA (Score 0-1)	No.	0	SDF indicates SEA, Section 2.9. However, this does not appear to indicate that a stand alone more detailed SEA document exists.	0.5	IDP (Section 4.5): SDF contains a SEA of the impact of development proposals contained in the SDF. However, it is likely that this does indicate that a stand alone more detailed SEA	0.5	Although the SDF recognizes the legislation that requires the SDF to conduct an SEA, there is no dedicated SEA document or section in the SDF. However, due to the use of the Limpopo	0.5	No, although the IDP indicates on pg 112: Compilation of Strategic Environmental Assessment (SEA), as a project with budget.	0	IDP: SEA developed.	1	IDP: No.	0

No	Max Score	Limpopo Province	Mopani DM	Score	Greater Tzaneen LM	Score	Ba-Phalaborwa LM	Score	Maruleng LM	Score	Capricorn DM	Score	Polokwane LM	Score	Lepele Nhumpi LM	Score
							document does not exist. SDF: STRATEGIC ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT OF THE IMPACT OF DEVELOPMENT PROPOSALS CONTAINED IN THE SDF		Cplan CBAs a score of 0.5 is allocated.							
29.6	1	Plans/budget to implement above biodiversity specific tools (Score 0-1)	IDP budget for EMF, EMP.	1	EMP Section E.6.3 indicates State of the Environment Reporting System to be done by 2011 (pg 273), but no document or budget .	0.5	Implement EMF & Plan by 2015, Review of State of Environment Report/Develop EMF and Plan (Annexure A, IDP).	1	No. IDP Priority 10: ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT (S3.11.2): OBJECTIVE - To develop and implement EMP. SDF Review Goal = Environmental Management (pg 14). IDP priority = Refuse removal , waste and environmental management (pg 86).	0.5	SEA to be implemented, refer point above. Also CDM CDM IDP Key Programmes - Strategic Environmental Analysis (SEA) for SDFs	1	All above.	1	IDP: No.	0
30.1	1	BSP / Cons Plan - current	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0
30.2	1	EMF - current	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0
30.3	1	EMP - current	No.	0	No. 2012/2013	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0
30.4	1	SoER - current	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0
30.5	1	SEA - current	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0
31	1	Other environmental management tools other than those indicated above	IDP budget for Climate change research; Water quality monitoring plan.	1	No.	0	Integrated Environmental Programme of the Ba-Phalaborwa Municipality (IDP, Section 4.5). Develop an Open Space System (IDP Strategic Plan).	1	No.	0	LED states Environmental Management Policy, but with respect to security therefore not able to determine real environmental component.	0	A Biodiversity or Conservation plan has been compiled for endangered plants, and Environmental Strategic Framework report has been developed. Finalizing compilation of Environmental by-laws. Land Use Management Policy 2012 - with environmental considerations - not mentioned in IDP (SDF predates).	1	No.	0

No	Max Score	Limpopo Province	Mopani DM	Score	Greater Tzaneen LM	Score	Ba-Phalaborwa LM	Score	Maruleng LM	Score	Capricorn DM	Score	Polokwane LM	Score	Lepele Nhumpi LM	Score
		<b>GENERAL COMMENTS:</b>	Environmental Sensitive Areas (PA, EIA 32m rivers, wetlands from BGIS) included; with strong focus on protecting environmentally sensitive areas. Lack of more general land use / development guidelines, which should include a clear sub-section e.g. protect rivers, buffers, forests, although rivers & wetland protection noted in environmental analysis sections per LM. No LUMS exists. CRDP included which has good linkage to environmental analysis of previous district SDF. Most biodiversity specific documents, plus additional.		Basic CBA Map lacking. General guidelines, but lack of more specific land use guidelines, which should include a clear sub-section. No dedicated environmental staff. Agriculture & Environment Management Committee (Annual Report, Addendum B). EMP document only. Rural focus is clear but no Mopani District ISRDP.		Basic CBA Map lacking. General guidelines, but lack of more specific land use guidelines, which should include a clear sub-section. No dedicated environmental staff. General lack of NWA & effluent monitoring. SOER only. Plans to develop EMP and EMF. NO final SDF Map, only recommendations?		Basic CBA Map from Limpopo C Plan included in SDF (Figure 20a). Lack of more specific land use guidelines, which should include a clear sub-section. No dedicated environmental staff. Plan to develop EMP.		No CBA Map. No SDF or LED to assess. Lack of biodiversity specific documents, yet commitment to environment.		No CBA Map. No LED to assess. Several biodiversity specific documents, yet no mention of CBA.		No CBA Map - SDF predates C-Plan. No LED to assess. No maps in SDF to assess, although conservation priority areas, including wetlands, rivers and floodlines. Not even a Table of Contents in SDF.	
<b>Max Score</b>	<b>62</b>	<b>Total Score</b>	Maximum Score 61	<b>35.5</b>	Maximum Score 60	<b>29</b>	Maximum Score 61	<b>30.5</b>	Maximum Score 61	<b>33</b>	Maximum Score 60	<b>30.5</b>	Maximum Score 60	<b>35.5</b>	Maximum Score 60	<b>28</b>
<b>minus LUMS</b>	<b>61</b>		Minus Criterion 5 LUM Scheme		Minus criterion 5 LUMS		Minus Criterion 5 LUM Scheme		Includes Criterion 5 LUMS		Minus criterion 5 LUM Scheme		Minus criterion 5 LUM Scheme		Minus criterion 5 LUM Scheme	
<b>minus TFCA</b>	<b>60</b>	<b>Percentage</b>	Greater Limpopo TFCA in MDM	<b>58.2</b>	Greater Limpopo TFCA not in GTLM	<b>48.3</b>	Greater Limpopo TFCA in LM	<b>50</b>	Greater Limpopo TFCA not in LM	<b>54.1</b>	Greater Limpopo TFCA not in LM	<b>50.8</b>	Greater Limpopo TFCA not in LM	<b>59.2</b>	Greater Limpopo TFCA not in LM	<b>46.7</b>
<b>minus BR</b>	<b>58</b>	<b>Category</b>	BR in DM	<b>D</b>	BR in LM	<b>D</b>	BR in LM	<b>D</b>	BR in LM	<b>D</b>	BR in LM	<b>D</b>	BR in LM	<b>D</b>	BR in LM	<b>D</b>
<b>minus NPAES</b>	<b>57</b>	<b>Category</b>	NPAES in DM	<b>FAIR</b>	NPAES in LM	<b>FAIR</b>	NPAES in LM	<b>FAIR</b>	NPAES in LM	<b>FAIR</b>	NPAES in LM	<b>FAIR</b>	NPAES in LM	<b>FAIR</b>	NPAES in LM	<b>FAIR</b>

**Table 15.** Limpopo Province: Greater Sekhukhune District, Capricorn District and Waterberg District - Allocated scores for each criterion per municipality with a brief summary motivation indicating level of social-ecological content.

No.	Max Score	Limpopo Province	Greater Sekhukhune DM	Score	Ephraim Mogale LM (Old=Greater Marble Hill)	Score	Elias Motosoaledi LM	Score	Fetakgomo LM	Score	Greater Tubatse LM	Score	Makhudutha maga LM	Score	Waterberg DM	Score	Mookgophong	Score	Bela-Bela	Score
1.1	1	IDP (Score 0-1)	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1
1.2	1	LEDs (Score 0-1)	Y (Indicated in IDP S6.4. LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT)	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y (indicated in IDP as a sector plan)	1	Y (Only Table of Contents sourced).	1	Y (Indicated in IDP: Chapter Economic Analysis - LED)	1	Y	1
1.3	1	SDF (Score 0-1)	Y (Indicated in IDP S2.2. SPATIAL RATIONALE & S5.1 Sector Plans). SDF map sourced.	1	Y	1	Y	1	Yes. However, dated 2007, whereas IDP states: The reviewed SDF (2012/13 Financial Year)	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y (Sourced SDF possibly out-dated)	1
1.4	1	LUM Scheme (Score 0-1)	Dependent on local municipal LUMS. IDP states: SDM has initiated a LUM System project for its local municipalities therefore allocated score of 1.	1	No. IDP: No applicable Land Use Management Scheme. According to IDP: S10.11 Land Use Management System. The draft has been compiled but not approved as yet due to lack of legislation to back the system. <b>Score of 0.5 allocated due to draft.</b>	0.5	Y (Indicated in SDF 2007 states: A Land Use Management Scheme for the EMLM is underway and will in all probability be in operation before the end of 2007. A new Town Planning Scheme for Groblersdal was proclaimed in 2006. IDP 2013: The then DPLGH( Department of Local Government and Housing currently known as COGHSTA appointed consultants to develop LUMS for the Municipality. There is a draft land use management in place).	1	Y (Indicated in IDP)	1	Y. However, the IDP states that the scheme is only applicable in the proclaimed townships and Towns of the municipality.	0.5	Y (Indicated in IDP: S5.1. Spatial rationale sector plan)	1	Local municipal schemes applicable and in place according to WDM IDP.	1	Y. (Indicated in WDM IDP - Local municipal schemes applicable and in place according to WDM IDP. IDP: Land use management is in place and it has been adopted by Council in February 2009. Project = Conduct LUMS awareness campaigns (Road shows)	1	Y	1
1.5	1	Annual Report	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1
1.6		Documents exist but not sourced	LED; SDF		Not applicable.		LUM Scheme.		LUM Scheme		Not applicable.		LED; LUM Scheme		LED.		LED, LUMS		Not applicable.	
2.1	1	IDP up to date	Yes. 19 June 2014 (DV accessed).	1	IDP. 2014/15.	1	Yes. IDP 2014/2015	1	2013-2014	0.5	Yes. 2014/15.	1	Y. 2014 - 2015 (DV accessed). Adopted 30 May 2014.	1	Y. 2014/15	1	Y. DRAFT 2014/15	1	Yes. 2014 - 2015	1
2.2	1	LEDs up to date	No. LED Strategy. Adopted / updated 2007.	0	No. April 2008.	0	No. LED dated 2007.	0	No - 30 June 2011	0	No. May 2007.	0	No. IDP: MLM has developed and adopted the LED strategy in 2006/7 financial year.	0	No. LED 2007 document sourced - only Table of Contents. IDP states: In the process of review 13/14 Financial Year	0	Unknown, although IDP updated to include new LED projects over the year.	0	No. LED 2008.	0
2.3	1	SDF up to date	Yes. IDP: 5.1. Sector plans in 2013-14: The reviewed SDF is in place. Adopted / updated in 2013. Other IDP section indicates first SDF in 2004 and reviewed in 2008.	1	SDF 2006. IDP 2014/15: SDF adopted 25 June 2007 and not reviewed.	0	SDF sourced is dated 2007. According to IDP 2013/14 - Review of SDF with budget is indicated. An updated version may be available.	0	SDF sourced is dated 2006 - 2007. Note that the IDP states: dated 2007, whereas IDP states: The reviewed SDF (2012/13 Financial Year). Latter allocates score 1.	1	No. November 2007. IDP does not indicate any subsequent review.	0	Yes. SDF sourced: 2007. IDP: SDF Approved during 2007/8 and reviewed in 2014 awaits approval. 5 yr review cycle therefore up to date.	1	Y. SDF 2014.	1	SDF: 2009 sourced. However, IDP: Data Source, SDF 2012/2013. 5 yr review cycle therefore should have been reviewed in 2014. WDM indicates 2014 SDF.	0	SDF 2006 document sourced. However, the WDM SDF states: The Bela-Bela SDF is dated July 2011. IDP states: The 2011 SDF has been completed and approved by Council in May 2012.	1

2.4	1	LUM up to date	IDP: Table 142: All local municipal LUMS are drafts.	0	IDP: No.	0	LUMS not sourced, date unknown. Should be revised with SDF.	0	LUMS in IDP: developed and adopted by the Council (August 2008)	0	No. 2006	0	Guided by the SDF the Land Use Management Scheme (LUMS) was developed and adopted in 2008. Reviewed with SDF therefore up to date - refer above.	1	Should be revised with LM SDF. Zero indicated due to LM scores.	0	IDP: Land use management is in place and it has been adopted by Council in February 2009.	0	LUMS 2008. If the SDF is 2011, the LUMS should be approved in 2011?	0
2.5	1	Annual Report up to date	No. 2011/2012	0	Yes. 2014/15	1	Yes. IDP 2014/2015	1	Draft 2013 - 2014	0	No. 2011/12.	0	No. Draft Annual Report 2012/13.	0	Yes. 2014/15	1	No. Draft 2012/13	0	No. 2012/13.	0
3.1	1	Summary biodiversity section or environmental analysis (Score 0-1)	IDP: Page 183: NATURAL ENVIRONMENT - Good (CBA, land cover, endemism). Page 568: Integrated Environmental Management Plan (IEMP) that needs to be approved. Page 176: ENVIRONMENTAL POLLUTION CONTROL/MANAGEMENT. No SDF to assess.	1	Yes. IDP: 6.3 Climate and Environmental Analysis - climate, topography, geology, water, pollution issues - Poor. SDF: 2.2.12 Environmentally Sensitive Areas & 2.2.8 Topography, Hydrology, Biophysical Slope Analysis.	1	IDP: S8.1.14 ENVIRONMENTAL PROFILE - Very Poor. SDF: ii) Phase 2: Spatial Analyses of the Current Reality - Physical and environmental features. 2.3.19 Environmental Management & S3.14 ENVIRONMENTAL CONSERVATION AND SENSITIVE AREAS	1	IDP: Section 2.2.6. Environmental analysis - Biophysical environment, environmental management and issues. Notes FTM's Integrated Environmental Programme illustrates (using maps) sensitive environments - but no maps in IDP. Fair. SDF: S7. ENVIRONMENTAL, TOURISM AND HERITAGE SITES - but no description of biophysical environment.	0.5	IDP: 2.2.14. Climate and Environmental Analysis - Biophysical, pollution and climate change issue - Poor. SDF S24. NATURAL ENVIRONMENT	1	Yes. IDP S2.2.7 Key Focus Area (KFA) 7: Environmental analysis - Biophysical, sensitivity map - threat status, wetland protection, issues - Poor (but no vegetation, wetlands, key rivers, sensitive area based on Endangered status, source unknown etc). SDF: No.	0.5	Yes. IDP S 7.2. Environmental Analysis - Legislation, biophysical, hydrology, climate change, air quality, wetlands. Fair. SDF: EMF integrated into SDF. LED TOC does not include environment.	1	Yes. IDP S4.1 Environmental Analysis - Biodiversity, biophysical, geology, climate change, biosphere, air quality. Poor. SDF S2 - Physical determinants of development	1	IDP 2014/15 SECTION: F 6. ENVIRONMENTAL, SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC ANALYSIS - Poor. IDP Section 6.3 INTEGRATED ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PLAN. SDF: S4. PHYSICAL AND ENVIRONMENTAL FEATURES	1
3.2	1	Does the SDF (& IDP) contain land use/development guidelines e.g. avoid wetlands or sensitive areas. (Score 0-1)	IDP: No. No SDF to assess.	0	IDP: No. However, IDP: S3.5 Role of Local Government - 10. Protection and enhancement of environmental assets and natural resources: Ensure development does not take place on wetlands. SDF: No clear section, although environmental sensitive areas noted (not much information regarding wetlands). EMP not available to assess.	0	SDF: S4.2.2 General Environmental Development Guidelines. However, it states 'there is no clear statement or coordinated strategy for the promotion, monitoring and enforcement of environmental management guidelines'. TABLE9: SUMMARY OF PRINCIPLES UNDERLYING SELECTED STRATEGIC ENVIRONMENTAL GUIDELINES. S 5.2.1. General Land Development Principles. Although not specific to only environmental features. IDP references SDF and environmental management guidelines.	0.5	IDP: No. SDF: General Development Guidelines S2.6. Any land development should: minimise interference with the natural environment; avoid settlement in places of hazard or high risk, e.g. flood plains; avoid settlement on unique natural habitats of flora and fauna; 1:100 year floodlines will be determined; • Higher residential densities in rural areas. S 2.4.10 Areas with Significant Tourism Potential and Conservation Value.	0.5	IDP indicates sensitive areas, but no specific land use guidelines section. SDF does indicate, for example, protection of rivers and delineates in Section 32.6 ZONE 6: CONSERVATION AREAS, but no section with general land use guidelines.	0	IDP: No section on land use guidelines. SDF: No.	0	IDP: No. SDF: Yes, contains land use /development guidelines for the EMF zones. However, no explicit section on protecting wetlands rivers, buffer areas although this is recommended.	0.5	IDP: No. SDF: No clear sub-section although S2.1.1 Natural Open Space System includes aquatic features etc.) that must be protected.	0	SDF: General development guidelines for specific areas. Section 12.2.4 Natural Environment: The following strategies and policies serve to protect sensitive environments. IDP: 14.3.4 LOCALISED STRATEGIC GUIDELINES FOR ENVIRONMENT MANAGEMENT - but not specific enough.	0.5

3.3	1	Cross referencing to environmental analysis/environmental concerns/biodiversity data & land use guidelines (Score 0-1)	IDP: Yes, references SDF, LED, national CRDP, Integrated EMP. Other key documents not available to assess.	0.5	IDP references the Integrated Environmental Programme, SDF and LED. LED references SDF which identified sensitive areas, and includes a brief Environmental Profile (S7). CRDP is not referenced in the IDP or the CRDP, if applicable. SDF: The Phase 1 Analysis Report of the Greater Marble Hall IDP served as basis for the analysis.	1	Yes. IDP references SDF, LUMS, LED and includes environmental profile. SDF references IDP. LED does not reference SDF, but may pre-date SDF 2007.	1	IDP: SDF, Letaba EMF, CRDP referenced in IDP. SDF references IDP, with only one reference to LED strategy, but SDF pre dates LED. LED makes one reference to SDF nodal development. CRDP references IDP, SDF and LED.	1	SDF, LED referenced in IDP. No EMP. IDP referenced in SDF. LED includes Section on environment, although not including all issues etc.	0.5	SDF, LED referenced in IDP. Land Use Management Policy exists. CRDP does not include environmental sensitive areas of IDP, although each includes a section on the natural environment. SDF references IDP - S2.1 MAKHUDUTHAMAGA IDP REVIEW 2006/2007.	1	IDP: references SDF, but not in terms of the environmental component: EMF. SDF references IDP objectives, projects etc. EMP referenced in IDP, but not SDF. Although environmental management identified as important, no section on SDF environmental sensitive areas etc, although IDP and SDF referenced.	0.5	IDP: References SDF, LED, environmental analysis included. CRDP not referenced, if any. SDF references IDP S10.3 IDP strategies and priorities etc. and LED (not projects it appears).	1	IDP references SDF, but the 2014/15 does not include the environmental analysis. IDP references LED strategy of 2008. IDP & SDF referenced in LED. LED has no subsection on the environment.	0.5
3.4	1	Includes environmental priorities (e.g. CBA, environmental sensitive areas) & risks (Score 0-1)	IDP: CBA indicated, including risks - see 19.1 although latter not listed like other documents. SDF Map sourced does not include CBAs but environmentally sensitive areas.	1	IDP: S4 - Environmental sensitive areas mainly along stream areas. According to the LED, the SDF has indicated sensitive environmental areas. Risks: 4.2 Water pollution; 5. Air quality and pollution. Strips of erosion can be found in the valleys alongside most of the perennial and non-perennial rivers. <b>No sub-section on environmental risks or challenges.</b> SDF: 2.2.12 Environmentally Sensitive Areas. Risks not in a sub-section, but scattered in document - Deforestation and overgrazing in Sekhukhuneland (and the study area) is severe, but appears to improve as one approaches the east of the study area. Pollution of the Olifants River is a problem.	1	IDP S8.1.14 Environmental Profile- Environmental conservation and sensitive areas - but only references Nature Reserves. S8.1.11 Land use challenges - Environmental Sensitive areas: The mountainous area and hydrological pattern to the central and eastern parts of the municipal area - but this is not under the environmental profile section and the SDF maps not included in IDP. IDP S8.1.15 Environmental Challenges. SDF: Yes. These nature reserves and other environmentally sensitive areas are indicated on Map 2 and Map 4 of the SDF (Refer above).	1	IDP: Deforestation, erosion, inappropriate agricultural methods, which leads to overgrazing and desertification. Table 15 - Air Quality, water pollution, uncontrolled fires, soil erosion, overgrazing, deforestation, erosion. Sensitive areas noted in SDF but no maps to assess (SDF identifies developments edges and determine the direction of growth. It further identified environmentally sensitive areas). IDP: The FTM has fewer environmentally sensitive areas with serious spatial concerns. About seven (08) wetlands have been identified, that need protection. SDF recognizes 6. Environmental deterioration.	1	IDP indicates sensitive areas, but no specific land use guidelines section. SDF does indicate, for example, protection of rivers and delineates ZONE 6: CONSERVATION AREAS. Risks: Water pollution, Air pollution. No section on environmental threats/risks/impacts in IDP & SDF. SDF: Rehabilitated asbestos mines are currently being exposed due to overgrazing by variety of animals, digging, gathering of firewood and erosion.	0.5	IDP: Yes. Environmental sensitive areas and risks (challenges - point 19). However, not CBA. SDF: Includes Conservation Area - inadequate and a reflection of out-dated SDF.	0.5	SDF includes environmental priorities - EMF zones (open space system, WBR, PA), but not a section on risks. Figure 96: ENVIRONMENTALLY SENSITIVE AREAS = WBR. IDP includes risks & a section on heritage sites and wetlands, but not other priorities.	0.5	IDP: No priorities of sensitive areas, only includes WBR and nature reserves. Risks: climate change, alien vegetation, deforestation, air pollution, waste management. SDF: Yes a series of environmental maps, but no risks section.	0.5	WDM SDF 2011 S2.2.3.1 Bela-Bela SDF: indicates Bela-Bela SDF 2011 has mapped environmentally sensitive areas, WBR and inland water (Figure 5: BELA-BELA SDF). SDF 2006: S4. PHYSICAL AND ENVIRONMENTAL FEATURES. IDP S6.4 The potential risks.	1

4	1	Summary biodiversity maps (Score 0 -1). If maps are in IDP & SDF, Score = 1.	IDP: Figure 42: Biodiversity Assessment - CBA Map (Source LEDET, 2011 - version 1), natural areas, conservation areas, plant endemism, land cover, degradation and erosion. <b>No EMP or SDF to assess, although SDF map sourced with environmentally sensitive areas.</b>	1	IDP: No. SDF: MAP 3: NATURAL ENVIRONMENT. <b>But map not in document to assess.</b>	0.5	SDF: These nature reserves and other environmentally sensitive areas are indicated on Map 2 and Map 4 of the SDF. <b>No maps in document to assess. IDP 2013/14 no maps, but Nature Reserves listed.</b>	0.5	IDP: No maps. <b>SDF has maps but not in document to assess.</b>	0.5	IDP: No. SDF: Yes. With conservation Zones and sensitive areas identified. Cannot determine these zones on the maps in document (resolution poor), but the zones don't appear to be present.	0.5	IDP: S2.2.7 KFA 7: Environmental analysis - Map 14 :MLM sensitive and protected areas (but map not in document). SDF: Annexure 1 - Conservation Area in SDF Map but lacks series of biodiversity maps. Indicative of out-dated SDF.	0.5	IDP: No. SDF: Yes. Environmental Sensitive Areas based on EMF 2010.	0.5	IDP: No. SDF: Yes. Series of maps. Conservation Zone and Open Space System is final component to SDF map.	0.5	WDM SDF 2011 S2.2.3.1 Bela-Bela SDF: indicates Bela-Bela SDF 2011 has mapped environmentally sensitive areas, WBR and inland water (Figure 5: BELA-BELA SDF). IDP MAP7: ENVIRONMENTAL SENSITIVE AREAS & MAP8: CONSERVATION/ FLORA & FAUNA MAP.	1
5	1	Does the LUM Scheme include a conservation zone or at minimum consider environmental protection (Score 0-1)	Dependent on local municipal LUMS.		<b>No LUMS sourced to assess.</b>		<b>No LUMS sourced to assess.</b>		<b>No LUMS sourced to assess.</b>	0	No.	0	<b>No LUMS sourced to assess.</b>		Bela-Bela LM does not have a conservation zone. <b>Mookgophong unknown at this stage.</b>		<b>No LUMS sourced to assess.</b>		Bela-Bela LM does not have a conservation zone.	0
6	2	Climate change & mitigation measures (Score 0-2). The Score of 2 only attained if proper spatial guidelines indicated in SDF (& IDP) e.g. floodlines, buffers, high water yielding areas.	IDP Air Quality Management Plan: Promote the reduction of greenhouse gases so as to support the <b>district's climate change protection programme.</b> LEDET project - climate change toolkit. No budget indicated but in planning phase. <b>No SDF, Climate Change Protection Programme, Integrated EMP or Disaster management plan to assess.</b> DM Air quality management plan developed.	0.5	IDP: S3.5 Role of Local Government - #10. Protection and enhancement of environmental assets and natural resources: 2. Reduce greenhouse gas emissions; mitigate climate change impacts; improve air quality. SDF: No mention of climate change. Water features such as dams and rivers. (These areas will also cater for possible flood areas of 1:100 years, which should be calculated for any development within or nearby these areas).	1	IDP: Climate change (2 projects: installation of solar powered robots/ traffic lights and planting of 400 trees). SDF notes requirement for 1:100, but does not mention climate change.	1	IDP: LEDET identified LM as one of the most vulnerable municipalities with respect to climate change. Climate change has a direct impact on the ability of the FTM to meet her developmental objectives. This IDP/Budget thus sets out to integrate climate change into wide municipal planning. SDF does not mention climate change, although importance of flood line included (1:100 year floodlines will be determined for any development near or adjacent to water drainage).	0.5	Climate change not mentioned in IDP or SDF. LED mentions climate changes as a threat to the environment.	0	KPA: Spatial rationale - Climate change/global warming - Arrange environmental awareness i.e. advocate disengagement with wood and encourage solar and other sources of energy friendly to environment. LEDET Project - climate change toolkit. SDF: No mention of climate change or floods.	1	IDP: Climate change in environmental analysis section. Projects: Air pollution and (Department of Health); climate change, LEDET climate change toolkit. Climate change Committee. TRANSITION TO LOW CARBON - ECONOMY. ACTION PROGRAMME: Appointment of climate change committee and climate change analysis. SDF 2013 S4.2.2.3 Climate change - but not adequate reference to flood prone areas or mitigation requirements. DM Air quality management plan developed.	1.5	IDP: Climate change is indicated, and the lack of appropriate stormwater management for flooding in vulnerable areas. <b>Section 9.4 Mapped Risk Areas -however this section not in report to assess, or previous IDP.</b> SDF: No.	1.5	IDP S6.3 CLIMATE CHANGE. However, mitigation measures lacking. Sub-programme: 114. Explore use of Green Energy (ST)	0.5
7	2	Key biodiversity legislation to demonstrate awareness for compliance (Score 0-2)	IDP: NEMA, NEMAQ, NEMWA, but not NWA or NEMBA.	0.5	KPA 1 Service delivery and infrastructure development - Key development priorities: Compliance of council with <b>NEMA</b> and council's Integrated environmental plan. 1 key legislation. SDF: Only NEMA.	0.5	IDP: Only NEMA and NEMWA. SDF: NEMA.	0.5	IDP: NEMA, NWA, NEMAQ, but not NEMBA. SDF: NWA, NEMA, NEMBA, ECA.	1.5	No key environmental legislation in IDP or SDF.	0	IDP: No key legislation. SDF: NEMA, ECA, NEMAQ.	0.5	Yes. IDP S7.2 Environmental Analysis. (SDF 2013: Only NEMA). Environmental Management Policy lists key legislation.	1	IDP: No key legislation, only NEMWA required waste official. SDF notes NEMA.	0.5	IDP SECTION: F 6. ENVIRONMENTAL, SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC ANALYSIS	1

8	1	Environmental projects (Score 0 - 1)	IDP Projects with budget: Environmental pollution Control - District IEMP and environmental policy in place. LEDET projects - Nature Reserves, Greening, Environmental awareness, Green economy plan, climate change toolkit, youth waste management programmes. Other funded projects/programmes: Water Conservation and Demand Management, Groundwater Management Programme. Recycling and water conservation is taking place.	1	IDP: Programme 15: Sports ,Parks and Recreation: Greening of the Municipality – biodiversity conservation: 1. Planting trees; 2. <b>No of environmental projects.</b> Programme 16: Environmental Management - Alien plant control Moutse West. Dept of Agriculture LandCare project: Alien plant control Moutse West. IDP Projects Phase 2014/15: Landfill site maintenance - rehabilitation of sites. LEDET: maintenance of Nature Reserves, Tree planting, Greenest Municipality Competition, Environmental Awareness, climate change toolkit, appoint youth to support municipalities to implement waste management. Recycling is taking place.	1	11. PROJECT PHASE: LandCare - Veld management. National DEA: Control of bush encroachment; Soil conservation; Wetland conservation. LEDET: Biodiversity scientific support services on biodiversity management. Limpopo Tourism Agency - Upgrade, develop, maintain infrastructure at Nature Reserves. <b>No LM projects.</b> EPWP jobs but not clear regarding alien clearing etc. Recycling and water conservation is taking place.	1	IDP Projects: SDF & LUMS, Greening of the Municipality. Agriculture: Soil conservation, LEDET: Biodiversity scientific support services on biodiversity management. Environmental impact assessment. KPA Spatial Rational - Development challenge/issue - Environmental problems - Strategy: Undertake environmental awareness i.e disengagement with wood & encourage solar and other sources of energy friendly to environment. SDF project: Waste recycling Project (funding to be secured). Recycling is undertaken by a company.	1	IDP: Projects - Planting of trees (arbor day), Develop energy efficiency plan, Establishment of parks and nurseries, rain harvesting, Environmental cleaning campaigns, Environmental campaign. Strategies and project outputs: Objective - Increased provision of green economy and sustainable environmental management, Project output - Recycling and development of buy back centers. Project output: Tree planting, Establishment of nurseries, Environmental awareness campaigns. Ngwaabe energy centre (LEDET). Recycling and rain harvesting is taking place.	1	IDP. Alien plants - The National Department of environment is managing the programme of eradication of alien vegetation- Projects are being implemented in wards 12,13,14 and 16. Projects Phase: Wetlands and protections of environmental sensitive areas. Environmental awareness and clean up campaigns; Greenest City Competition; LEDET projects - Tree planting, Assist to implement Green economy plan, awareness campaigns and capacity building programmes; climate change toolkit, youth waste management. KPA identified projects under air pollution - campaign, monitoring (Department of Health), but not in projects section. No DM projects, although EMP to be reviewed by LEDET.	1	IDP Projects: Implement EPWP Project - but no budget. Section GREENING ECONOMY: The municipality signed a memorandum of understanding with the Department of water Affairs for the removal of alien plants. EPWP - 300 people were employed for a period of six months during the last financial year. LEDET: Tree planting, Environment awareness campaign and capacity building, Greenest competition.	1	IDP SECTION:P 15. PROJECT PHASE - LEDET: Tree planting; Greenest Municipality Competition; Environmental Awareness; implement climate change toolkit; youth to implement waste management programmes. DEA: DEVELOPMENT OF A NURSERY; Waste Management and litter picking	1
---	---	--------------------------------------	--	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	--	---	---	---	--	---	--	---

9	2	Water quality and quantity with linkage to IDP projects (Score 0-2)	IDP Projects section: Water Conservation and Demand Management, Groundwater Management Programme. However, NWA sustainability, reserve, green drop etc. not indicated.	0.5	IDP: No. S17.7 Water Services Development Plan for delivery of basic services (water & sanitation). No guarantee that water conservation is being implemented.	0	IDP & SDF: No. LED notes water quality impacts of mining impacting on agriculture. Strategic thrust under Agriculture - 2.5 Environmental protection and management: Actively engage in relevant water quality management forums.	0.5	IDP: Water quality and ecological sustainability issues not mentioned. IDP SIDP S5.3. BASIC SERVICE DELIVERY AND INFRASTRUCTURE PLANNING: SECTOR PLANS - Water Sector Plan.	0	IDP: No. LM is not a Water Services Authority or Provider. Water supply however is a key need in the LM - Rain harvesting project (above).	0.5	IDP indicates: Water pollution is the result of the calmativ impact of the insufficient solid waste removal, lack of sanitation infrastructure, <b>sewerage effluent</b> etc. Yet no green drop, NWA extract, etc. Community Water Supplies Master Plan, Water Services Plan (NOT a Water Services Authority nor a Water Services Provider). IDP: Investigate the possibility to harvest rain water	0.5	IDP: S10 Disaster Management: Mining and industrial activities might affect the underground water quality especially in Lephalale and Mogalakwena. IDP S8.1 WATER AND SANITATION: The Green Drop Certification Programme for Wastewater Quality Management Regulation. Sustainable supply not indicated (reserve). The Environmental Management Policy indicates NWA and quality of rivers etc.	1.5	IDP: Sub-programme: To develop and maintain an infrastructural system which provides sustainable access to basic services: To achieve a green drop status of 95% by 2015. However, NWA and ecological reserve not mentioned. Water Service development plan developed.	0.5	IDP: BELA-BELA WATER SERVICES DEVELOPMENT PLAN (WSDP). Table:70 - Page 325: Sub-Programme Objective: Improve Green drop status from 17.5% to 70%. Water quality also linked to climate change issues. Section F: 2. Polluter Pays Principle. 3. The National Water Act.	1.5
10	1	Environmental sustainability (Score 0 - 1)	IDP S3.4. MAYORAL STRATEGIC PRIORITIES - S3.4.4. Spatial Development and Sustainable Land Use Management. Section Integrated EMP (IEMP).	1	IDP: STRATEGIC THRUST 3 : SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT AND ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT. 3.3 Priority Strategies: Environmental Management. Outcome: % achievement of environmental targets in the Environmental Assessment Plan. Priority Issue/Programme 16: Environmental Management (KPA 2: Basic Service Delivery)	1	IDP: Issue 19 Environmental Management. SDF notes environmental sustainability. S8.2.2.5 Environmental protection and management (but under Thrust 2: Agriculture). Mission: The Elias Motsoaledi Local Municipality is committed to: • Ensure provision of services to communities in a sustainable manner. SDF: Sustainable management and use of resources (environmentally, economically etc.).	1	IDP states 'IDP incorporates the principles of sustainable development throughout'. According to the SDF: The environmental management sector plan identified a few environmental sensitive areas, potential tourism spots and significant heritage sites.	1	IDP Objective: Social environmental Sustainability. This is indicated in SDF.	1	Yes. IDP S2.6.8 Key Focus Area: 54 Environmental management - S2.6.8.1 Environmental Management. SDF: Waste Management and Environmental Issues - Environmental Protection and Management, - Development of detailed Environmental Assessment Plan for Municipality.	1	IDP: S7.2 Environmental Analysis - S2.1 Sustainable Development. Various other policy and legislation on sustainable development. SDF includes sustainable development concept. 5.5 MUNICIPAL PRIORITY ISSUES - No1: Municipal Environmental Health & Environmental Management.	1	IDP: Environmental Analysis: RSA Constitution amongst others provides for sustainable environment. Strategic Objective: LED KPA: To promote and enforce acceptable environmental practices - EMP and environmental capacity required. Table, Strategic Priorities in relation with National Priorities - Environmental and natural resources development programme and Green economy and creation of green jobs - To promote and enforce acceptable environmental practices HOWEVER THE MUNICIPAL PRIORITY IS 'SOLID WASTE'?	1	IDP: 6.2 BELA-BELA SPATIAL FRAMEWORK FOR FUTURE DEVELOPMENT - ENVIRONMENTAL PERSPECTIVE	1
11	1	Environmental Management as a Key Performance Area (KPA) (Score 0 - 1)	IDP: No. National KPAs	0	No. See above.	0	No.	0	IDP: No.	0	IDP: No.	0	No, although it is a Key Focus Area.	0	No.	0	IDP: No.	0	IDP: No.	0

12	3	Inclusion of EMF, biosphere reserve (& TFCA for Ba-Phalaborwa LM & Bushbuckridge LM with maximum score of 3) (Score 0-1; 0-2 or 0-3)	IDP: Neither EMF or K2C noted.	0	IDP: No. SDF: Provincial Environmental Management Framework. Score 0.5 as IDP does not mention EMF, yet SDF does. Biosphere Reserve and TFCA do not apply.	0.5	Biosphere Reserve and TFCA do not apply.		IDP: Neither EMF or K2C noted. TFCA does not apply.	0	IDP: Neither EMF or K2C noted.	0	EMF not indicated; and K2C not applicable.	0	IDP and SDF include the Waterberg Biosphere Reserve, but IDP does not include the EMF. SDF 2014 included WDM EMF. Score of 2 is allocated for local DM EMF.	2	IDP: WBR included. Not the EMF. SDF: WBR included. EMF not included.	1	IDP & SDF: No. In 2006, the WBR may not have been present, although the Waterberg District SDF indicates that the 2011 Bela-Bela SDF includes the WBR.	1
13	1	Inclusion of Protected Areas and Conservation areas (at minimum the SDF map should include these areas, while the IDP summary biodiversity map should include these areas). (Score 0-1)	IDP: Yes, map included. SDF Map includes Nature Reserves and Conservation Areas.	1	IDP: No. SDF: 2.2.11 Tourist Attractions, Nature Reserves and Conservancy Areas. Map not available to check in SDF.	0.5	SDF: These nature reserves and other environmentally sensitive areas are indicated on Map 2 and Map 4 of the SDF. IDP 2013/14 no maps.	0.5	IDP: No map, but indicates. Potlake Nature Reserve. SDF has maps but not in document to assessed but it indicates Potlake and Stellenbosch nature reserves, presumably PA and CA respectively; and therefore presumably on an SDF Map.	1	IDP states: There is couple of cases where the environment has been kept in its natural states through a number of private game and nature reserves. However, no map. SDF: Numerous nature reserves noted but no map. Only part of a PA - Motlatse Canyon NR (Mpumalanga), falls within the LM.	0.5	IDP: No Nature reserves occur in the LM. According to BGIS PA, no PA occur. NOT APPLICABLE.		IDP notes several Nature Reserves, and WBR but no map. SDF includes proclaimed protected areas, WBR, and (appears to be) conservation areas.	1	IDP notes Nature Reserves and the WBR, but no map. SDF: Includes conservation areas - This map recognises the existing nature reserves and conservation areas including a 3km buffer around.	1	SDF 2006: Map 4.1 Nature Reserves. Resolution of WDM SDF with Bela-Bela SDF 2011 Map very low and illegible. IDP: No map, but S6.3 INTEGRATED ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PLAN indicates nature reserves and western portion as a Conservation Zone.	0.5
14	1	Inclusion of National Protected Areas Expansion Strategy Focus Areas	IDP: No. SDF or IEMP not available to assess.	0	No.	0	No.	0	IDP: No. SDF: No.	0	IDP: No. SDF: No.	0	NPAES Focus Areas not sited in LM. NOT APPLICABLE.		IDP: No. SDF: No.	0	IDP: No. SDF: No.	0	No.	0
15	1	Inclusion of spatial biodiversity priority areas - CBA, ESA, NFEPA, systematic biodiversity plans based. (Score 0-1)	IDP: Yes, appears to be L C-Plan v1 (low resolution). NFEPA will not be included in Version 1. SDF not sourced to determine presence but presumably present based on IDP reference. Score of 0.5 allocated due to lack of NFEPA. Final SDF Map sourced includes environmentally sensitive areas.	0.5	IDP and SDF: No. The SDF is dated 2006 and has not been reviewed, therefore allocated score of 0 especially since it should have been reviewed.	0	No.	0	IDP and SDF: No. IDP states: 'review of the SDF which is due will give a more, appropriate status for the threatened ecosystems, ecological corridors and other special biodiversity features identified in the Analysis Phase of this IDP'.	0	IDP: No. SDF: No.	0	IDP & SDF: No.	0	IDP and SDF: No. Interestingly however, the word CBA is used once.	0	IDP: No. SDF: No.	0	No. SDF 2006 probably predates MCBP or C-Plan availability; however WDM SDF extract appears not to include CBAs.	0
16	1	Inclusion of land use / development guidelines specific to CBA, ESA, NFEPA, systematic plans (Score 0-1)	IDP: No. No SDF to assess.	0	IDP and SDF: No. Refer above.	0	No.	0	IDP and SDF: No.	0	IDP: No. SDF: No.	0	IDP & SDF: No.	0	IDP: No. SDF: No, not relating to CBA etc; although protection of wetlands and rivers etc is a priority as it relates to the WBR.	0	IDP: No. SDF: No.	0	No.	0

17	2	Inclusion of appropriate natural resource management issues in IDP, LED, SDF; and environmental programmes (Score 0 - 2)	IDP Biodiversity Assessment section: Environmental issues - Decline of plant populations, overgrazing, deforestation, erosion, land degradation, over-exploitation (e.g. traditional medicine) & inappropriate nature resource management. <b>No sub-section with clear environmental issues.</b> LandCare Programme, see projects and programmes. <b>But no programmes/projects to combat all issues noted.</b>	1.5	IDP: Water pollution, air pollution, Strips of erosion. No sub-section on environmental risks or challenges. Priority Issue/Programme 16: Environmental Management. But no adequate programmes to address issues etc.	1	IDP: S8.1.15 Environmental Challenges. IDP Strategies / Programmes: EPWP, tree planting (climate change response). Not adequate programmes in IDP. LED: Implement a programme to improve the capacity of Tribal Authorities to manage land, environmental and associated agricultural aspects in their areas of functional influence. Prepare a detailed Environmental Management Framework and Management Plan for the Elias Motsoaledi area focusing on the impacts of the management of appropriate agricultural activities. • Conduct seminars and workshops to sensitize communities and agricultural extension staff on appropriate. Environmental management actions. Plans should be drawn up (in conjunction with local farming communities) to implement these plans.	1	IDP S2.2.6. Environmental analysis: The FTM's Integrated Environmental Programme illustrates (using maps) sensitive environments within the municipal jurisdiction i.e. areas environmentally sensitive to flora, mammal, butterfly, reptile, scarab, bird, total sensitivity and biospheres, cultural heritage sensitivity – with monuments). Table 15 sets out summarised analysis of environmental problems, threats and development constraints in the area. Issues not indicated in SDF or LED.	1.5	IDP and SDF do not include issues, but there are projects (see above). IDP strategy objectives (sub-programmes): KPI - % progress provision of green economy and sustainable environment, % progress provision of none grid energy to households, % progress development of energy efficiency plan, Waste management services prevalence of environmental degradation - % progress waste recycling and development of buy back centres. Waste management services prevalence of environmental degradation - Tree planting, Landcare and beautification, Establishment of nurseries, Environmental awareness campaigns.	1.5	Issues inclusion in IDP but not CRDP. No LED to assess. No EMP. SDF does not include environmental analysis with issues. IDP projects (criteria 8). IDP Prgrammes: Develop and implement a environmental awareness programme for communities, To ensure promulgation of By-laws in 2013/14 (environmental).	1.5	IDP Key Climate Change Issues / Risks in Local / District Municipalities in Limpopo: Issues relating to Climate Change - S 4. CLIMATE CHANGE AND GLOBAL WARMING IMPACT ON SOUTH AFRICA (see environmental drivers). However no issues in general (not related to climate change). Environmental programmes include air quality monitoring and EMP for developments. LEDET projects. However, no programmes for specific issues e.g. rehabilitation of deforested / erosion areas e.g. LandCare or other funded.	1.5	Inclusion of a few issues in IDP. IDP - STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE: To promote and enforce acceptable environmental practices - SUB-PROGRAMME - Environmental management & Open space management. Objective: To increase awareness of communities pertaining to climate change and environmental protection. STRATEGY Development of an environment management plan, <b>Appointment of environmental management officer to monitor and co-ordinate all environmental matters,</b> Conduct awareness campaigns on caring and managing our environment. SDF does not include issues.	1.5	IDP S6.4 The potential risks t: 1. landfill sites; 2. Inadequate sanitation systems; 3. Mushrooming of Informal Settlement; 4. Veld fires ; 5. Deforestation ; 6. Chemical spills and/ or other hazardous accidents; 7. Urban sprawl; 8. Land Degradation; 9. Spreading of Alien species; 10. Poor management of wetlands. PROGRAMMES: Working for Water Programme for aliens, Green Drop for water quality, Skills development - Introduction to Environmental Management, Conduct environmental awareness campaigns (ST), Train horticulturist, 114. Explore use of Green Energy (ST); however not adequate programmes for the issues. See projects above as well.	1.5
----	---	--	--	-----	---	---	---	---	--	-----	--	-----	---	-----	---	-----	---	-----	--	-----

18	1	Inclusion of ecosystem services (Score 0-1)	IDP: The role of biodiversity in agricultural and natural ecosystems is to ensure food security and sustainable agricultural production through direct or indirect provision of food for humans and their livestock, provision of raw materials and services, such as fibre, fuel and pharmaceuticals and the maintenance of ecosystem functions. However, no SDF detailed guidelines to assess appropriate inclusion. SDF Map sourced includes environmentally sensitive areas, but this is the final map not the biodiversity map.	0.5	IDP: No. SDF: S2.2.12.3 Sensitive areas include riverine systems etc. Protection of S4.2.1 Environmentally Sensitive Areas and Proposed Eco Tourism Development Areas § Pronounced water features such as dams and rivers. By including these in the open space system, ecosystem services safeguarded to degree.	0.5	IDP: Wetlands indicated as important (initiate wetland programme etc.). SDF: Protection - Pronounced water features such as dams and rivers. S4.2.1 Environmentally Sensitive Areas and Proposed Eco Tourism Development Areas. By including these in the open space system, ecosystem services safeguarded to degree.	0.5	IDP: S2.2.6. Environmental analysis - These wetlands need to be protected (take care of them) because they provide source of water and meet spiritual needs of the population. SDF: identified environmentally sensitive areas. Agriculture, mining and environmental are the main factors which influenced the determination of development edges and directions of growth for various settlements. However, no mention of rivers, wetlands etc.	0.5	IDP: No. SDF: "A holistic conservation approach should be adopted whereby rivers, ridges and vegetation are protected from unjustified exploitation" (GSDM: Central, Tubatse, Driekop, Praktiseer, Burgersfort Trend Report and Natural Development Plan, p: 4). NOT ADEQUATE.	0	IDP & SDF: Ecosystem services concept not addressed or understanding shown. Wetlands and sensitive areas identified in IDP with budget. The Municipality has identified wards and villages that have wetlands that need to be preserved. SDF environmental data very poor.	0	IDP and SDF: Ecosystem services concept not noted. SDF: Protection of rivers, wetlands, dams, drainage lines, riparian areas, Waterberg biosphere (catchment).	0.5	IDP and SDF: Ecosystem services concept not noted. IDP: No. SDF: 2.1.1 Natural Open Space System - includes dams, rivers, wetlands etc that need to be protected. River with 1km buffers should be protected. Nothing regarding high water yield areas though.	0.5	Water is life – it is the most important resource to encourage both social and economic development within communities. Protection of wetlands is important issue. Score of 0.5 is allocated for awareness of water is life; and SDF: • Protect sensitive river systems, sponges, wetlands and catchment areas; and • Preserve the banks of rivers, tributaries and watercourses as open space systems and also safeguard them against unsound land-use practices.	0.5
19.1	1	Key environmental drivers (Score 0-1)	IDP Biodiversity Assessment section: Environmental issues - Decline of plant populations, overgrazing, deforestation, erosion, land degradation, over-exploitation (e.g. traditional medicine) & inappropriate nature resource management. Also Refer - Page 176 - ENVIRONMENTAL POLLUTION CONTROL/ MANAGEMENT. No sub-section with clear environmental issues.	1	IDP: 4.2 Water pollution; 5. Air quality and pollution. Strips of erosion can be found in the valleys alongside most of the perennial and non-perennial rivers. No sub-section on environmental risks or challenges.	0.5	IDP S8.1.15 Environmental Challenges: Climate change, soil erosion, soil erosion, wetlands, rainfall (floods), air pollution, water pollution, Deforestation and fire, inadequate by-laws, lack of environmental awareness by communities.	1	Air pollution, water pollution, uncontrolled fires, biodiversity, soil erosion, over utilization (Deforestation, overgrazing, desertification), town land, cultural heritage, waste, medicinal waste, by-laws.	1	IDP and SDF: No section on environmental issues. See point 5.4 - statement relating to asbestos mine rehabilitation.	0	IDP: S2.2.7 KFA 7: Environmental analysis: Lack of bylaws, insufficient capacity on environmental management issues, Rainfall pattern are highly variable, disrupting agricultural production and causing related socio economic stresses, Urban greening, Alien Plants (water depletion), Air Pollution, Fires, Water pollution, Erosion, deforestation, looting of medicinal plants, Foreign plants invasion (biodiversity loss), cultural heritage, waste, medical waste.	1	IDP Issues relating to Climate Change -. Air pollution – mining, Ground water availability, Deforestation, Alien Invasion, Veld fires (Modimolle: SDF – no environmental sensitive areas – new developments allowed in wetlands) - varies per municipality.	1	Risks: Climate change, alien vegetation, deforestation, air pollution, waste management.	1	IDP S6.4: 1. landfill sites; 2. Inadequate sanitation systems; 3. Mushrooming of Informal Settlement; 4. Veld fires; 5. Deforestation; 6. Chemical spills and/ or other hazardous accidents; 7. Urban sprawl; 8. Land Degradation - 9. Spreading of Alien species; 10. Poor management of wetlands	1

19.2	1	Key social drivers (Score 0-1)	Backlogs in housing, water supply, sanitation, electrification, transport (e.g. poor roads which increases inaccessibility to clinics), waste management, health services.	1	Backlogs in educational, health, welfare, sports and community facilities, HIV & AID, limited access to basic services, unemployment, poverty.	1	Major backlogs in water, housing, electrification, health facilities. High HIV, poverty. IDP S8.4.11A. In summary, these are the social development challenges: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Insufficient council land for cemeteries;</li> <li>• Non maintenance and upgrading of the recreational facilities such as community halls;</li> <li>• Inability to develop sporting facilities within EMLM, that is rural areas in particular;</li> <li>• Most stadia were vandalized;</li> <li>• Late submission of the Sport, Art and Recreation Year Programme by the Provincial Department;</li> <li>• Relegation of responsibility (Sport Development) by the Provincial Department;</li> <li>• Inability to develop Parks Development Plan in all 104 villages (30 Wards) within EMLM;</li> <li>• Inadequate maintenance of existing parks;</li> <li>• Insufficient resources for the procurement of Playing Equipment's;</li> <li>• Development of Housing Master Plan;</li> <li>• 5510 Housing backlog;</li> <li>• Indigent Policy which does not conform to other Constitutional imperatives;</li> <li>• No network connections for the E-natis in the back-office for Traffic Officers;</li> <li>• Inability to deploy Traffic Officers to all 30 Wards on full-time;</li> <li>• Disaster management and solid waste management.</li> </ul>	1	Backlogs in water, housing, sanitation, electrification, refuse removal. Lack of hospitals, disease and mortality, inadequate health facilities, transport services, sports & recreational facilities. Crime, poor safety and security facility / infrastructure. Unemployment, poverty and inequality	1	IDP: SWOT analysis on basic service delivery and social analysis: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Aging infrastructure;</li> <li>- Lack of public amenities (parks and sports; facilities);</li> <li>- Ineffective waste management plan;</li> <li>- Inadequate implementation of infrastructure; investment plan;</li> <li>- High electricity backlog;</li> <li>- High roads and transport facilities infrastructure backlogs;</li> <li>- High housing backlogs;</li> <li>- High water and sanitation backlog</li> </ul>	1	IDP: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Low per capita income levels;</li> <li>• High illiteracy rates;</li> <li>• Hunger;</li> <li>• Unemployment and other social ills;</li> <li>IDP: S 2.1.3.2 Infrastructure Backlogs - water, housing, electricity, sanitation;</li> <li>-S2.1.3.6 Social and Community Development: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Food security, Youth development, early childhood development, Lack of play parks, limited libraries and other amenities</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	1	IDP: S9. SOCIAL ANALYSIS/ SERVICES - Housing backlog, Poor quality of RDP houses, High illiteracy, inadequate education facilities (overcrowding), Backlog/shortage of health facilities, inadequate health care, disease prevalence, Child support is high and of great concern, Shortage/Backlogs of safety and security facilities, Domestic violence (women and child abuse), crime.	1	IDP: Waste collection inadequate, HIV & AIDS, Inadequate health services (e.g. no site for social development offices etc.) & educational facilities, backlog in water, electricity, sanitation. No sub-section on challenges for all issues.	1	Backlog in water, sanitation, waste removal, housing, electricity, roads, education, recreational facilities, health facilities, safety and security. HIV/Aids and orphans.	1
------	---	--------------------------------	--	---	--	---	--	---	--	---	--	---	--	---	--	---	---	---	---	---

20	1	EIA and other regulations (Score 0-1)	IDP: EIA requirement indicated for projects. NEMA included. NWA not included.	0.5	IDP: Compliance of council with NEMA and council's Integrated environmental plan. S 3. Land use management - EIA mentioned. (NWA not indicated).	0.5	EIA indicated for cemeteries. SDF indicates EIA requirement.	0.5	IDP: EIA requirement indicated for projects. NEMA included. NWA included, but not green drop.	0.5	IDP: EIA only stated in association with waste management.	0	IDP & SDF: No.	0	IDP: EIA not indicated, but Wastewater Quality Management Regulation (green drop rating). (SDF 2014 notes NEMA and EIA in buffer zones).	0.5	IDP Projects indicate need for EIA or not, however NEMA and NWA / green drop not indicated.	0.5	IDP S162. Approved building plans (EIAs etc). IDP SECTION: F 6. Green drop ratings (see above).	1
21	2	Manage disaster risk (Score 0-2) For a Score 2 to be allocated there should be strategic identification of flood prone areas in SDF (on a map), as a minimum.	IDP: S2.4.16. Disaster Management. Numerous challenges listed, therefore not effective system in place yet. <b>The Disaster Management Plan &amp; the SDF not sourced to assess appropriate inclusion. Final SDF map does not indicate flood prone areas.</b>	1	IDP: S17.6 Disaster Management Plan. The plan was compiled and approved by Council on 26 September 2006.	1	IDP: The municipality developed a Disaster Management framework in 2006. The Plan is currently under review. The development of the framework will be in line with the district disaster management. <b>Lack of Disaster Risk Mitigation measures.</b> SDF notes requirement for 1:100.	1	IDP S5.3. BASIC SERVICE DELIVERY AND INFRASTRUCTURE PLANNING: SECTOR PLANS - Disaster Management Plan. <b>The Disaster Management Plan not sourced to assess appropriate inclusion.</b>	1	IDP: S2.4.5 Disaster Management (Challenge • Building in flood line areas). Building regulation policy - restricts developments in 1:50 year floodline. SDF: No flood prone areas or disaster risk areas identified.	1	IDP: S2.6.9 KPA 55: Disaster Management - but no strategy or programme involving flood prone areas etc. LED does not include disaster. SDF: No.	1	IDP: S10. DISASTER MANAGEMENT. FLOODING ACROSS THE WATERBERG DISTRICT - lists areas. Disaster Management Plan: 2015/2016 review/update (as it is done bi-annually.) SDF: However, on a micro scale, issues such as flood lines etc. have a very direct impact on development.	1.5	Section: DISASTER MANAGEMENT page 39. S9.1 Disaster Risk Analysis 9.2 Disaster Risk Legislative Prescripts 9.3 Municipal Risk Assessment: Institutional- Social – Economic- Environmental- Infrastructure Vulnerabilities; 9.4 Mapped Risk Areas; 9.5 State of Disaster Management in the Municipality. <b>Section 9 missing from document.</b>	1.5	7.10 DISASTER MANAGEMENT & EMERGENCY SERVICES. 7.10.2 The following possible disasters were identified - floods. <b>SDF 2006:</b> Some of the erven in Warmbaths Extension 11 area subject to flooding. Some of the erven in Bela-Bela Extension 11 are however affected by flooding which needs to be addressed prior to any development. Rivers -• Retain flood-line areas as open space.	1.5
22	3	Extent of integration / cross-referencing (Score 0 -3)	IDP references SDF, LED, EMP and national CRDP. <b>Other documents not available to assess. Therefore assessment only based on IDP referencing.</b>	2	IDP indicates the SDF and LED. SDF indicates IDP and LED.	2	Cross referencing between documents.	2	IDP references SDF, LED, EMP but not CRDP for Ward 1. SDF references IDP and LED, but not CRDP as it is dated before CRDP.	1	IDP references environment, SDF and LED, although no SDF maps referenced. Conservation areas are in IDP and SDF. SDF references IDP. LED references IDP and SDF.	2	IDP references environment, SDF, CRDP and LED, although no SDF maps referenced. CRDPs not referenced in IDP. SDF predates IDP, but includes previous IDP issues.	2	IDP references SDF but not adequately. SDF references IDP. CRDP not referenced in IDP or SDF 2013 (if applicable).	1	IDP references SDF, not CRDP if applicable. SDF and CRDP not available.	1	IDP references SDF, LED (8. LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT). SDF references IDP, and although it emphasises projects/need for LED the strategy document is not referenced.	2
23	2	Alignment of overlapping municipalities - Environmental issues and management (Score 0 -2)	IDP: Awareness of district role in alignment - all 5 local municipalities were visited by the district in joint consultative forums to solicit views of communities on issues of service delivery. S1.1.4.2. Key Sector Plans: SDM has developed numerous sectoral strategic and operational plans together with policies as joint venture with all local municipalities within the District as outlined below. See point 19 issues and programmes. Some alignment only in terms of environmental issues.	1	LM issues of water and air pollution not identified in DM.	0.5	Not all issues indicated in DM.	0.5	IDP: District Development Planning Forum. 1.2.9.1. Distribution of Roles and Responsibilities: A brief stakeholder analysis - SDM. Alignment only in terms of environmental issues. SDM IEMP not referenced in section on District Sector Plans.	1	Environmental issues lacking in documents. <b>Although an environmental sub-unit has been established there is no EMP indicated in IDP (or SDF 2007)?</b> SDM IEMP not referenced in section on District Sector Plans.	0	Although requirement for alignment with district is evident, e.g. IDP Representative Forum includes district, etc.; environmental issues alignment is only fair, and no reference to SDM IEMP. Alignment is however the responsibility of the district.	0.5	IDP: Climate change issues addressed per municipality. WDM Strategic Objectives to be adopted by LM. Framework plan to align with LM IDPs. MECHANISMS AND PROCEDURES FOR ALIGNMENT AND PARTICIPATION. Sufficient evidence showing attempt to align IDPs.	1.5	IDP of WDM identified LM issues relating to climate change: 1. Waste management; 2. Governance; 3. Deforestation; 4. Alien species invasion. Refer LM issues above, fairly well aligned. WDM EMP not indicated in LM IDP.	1.5	As per Mookgophong.	1.5

24	1	Monitoring & evaluation (Score 0-1)	IDP S2.7.6. Performance Management System (PMS). Numerous monitoring and evaluation of various programmes and systems, the IDP process etc. SDBIP strengthens PMS. Review processes for IDP and SDF.	1	Environment plan implementation not being monitored. <b>Environmental management is a district function, not clear how to be implemented to fit the district plan. Staff inadequate Devolution of services not yet complete pending district function. LEDET willing to allocate budget and assist. 8.4.2</b> Performance Management System (PMS) -approved by Council on 25 November 2010. There appears to be a lack of monitoring in general. SDF: Lacks monitoring and evaluation.	0.5	IDP: 8.2.9. Performance Management System (PMS). Projects - Reviews: LED strategy review, SDF . 8.7.2. Issues raised by the Auditor General: Page 246: This was due to lack of monitoring of the completeness of reporting documents by management. SWOT Analysis: PMS Not Fully Functional. SDF: Lacks monitoring and evaluation.	0.5	IDP page 128: Performance Management System. Development Core Function - Performance management (at corporate level) / monitoring & evaluation. Sector Plan: Performance Management Policy Framework. Review and monitoring of various documents included in IDP e.g. IDP, SDF, LED. SDF Lacks monitoring and evaluation.	0.5	IDP: S2.6.19 Organisational Performance Management System (OPMS) and Performance Management System (PMS), and SDBIP. SDF: Develop monitoring and evaluation tools to ensure that the SDF is implemented accordingly. SDF Implementation Forum. SDF: S41. MONITORING AND EVALUATION.	1	IDP: S2.7.3 KFA 59: Organisational Performance Management System (OPMS) and Performance Management. Challenges include: Inadequate performance results; Mainstreaming of the PMS Framework to all employees at management level. IDP review is a project with budget, not SDF. Monitoring and evaluation of various systems (sanitation, accountability systems, budget, of IDP). SDF does not include monitoring recommendations.	0.5	The main strategic outputs of the budget reform are to ensure: A.8. PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM. Challenges: • Inadequate baseline information to monitor progress for implementation of IDP; • Limited involvement of communities to monitor the performance of municipalities; • Performance management is not cascaded to all municipal employees. It is limited to top management. The SDBIP has 252 KPIs. SDF: Phase 7 provides guidelines on the implementation and monitoring of the SDF and the revision of the SDF, which should be coordinated with the IDP cycles.	1	IDP PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM (PMS); Review and implement LED strategy; Review of IDP; review of LUMS. SDF: Lacks monitoring and evaluation / review.	0.5	IDP: S B.10 PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM. Programmes: 144. Review and Implement existing policy framework (SDF, LUMS LED Strategy, etc.) to ensure conducive environment (ST). SDF 2006: (a) Research and Administration - ♦ Co-ordinating and monitoring nodal development and sustainable land management practices. SDF: Spatial Co-ordination Committee.	1
25	1	Evidence of financial capacity (Score 0-1)	IDP: IDP, SDF & other environmental projects have a budget. LED budgets.	1	IDP: Only minimal projects with budget.	1	IDP: Projects have budget but only minimal projects with budget.	1	IDP: Few projects budgetted, but not many projects.	0.5	IDP: Projects budgetted.	1	IDP: Projects have budget - good although no EMP.	1	IDP projects with budget do exist, but no DM specific projects e.g. SOER etc. In other words, more relevant environmental projects required.	0.5	IDP identified projects have funds, but adequate projects not identified or funded.	0.5	IDP identified projects have funds, but adequate projects not identified or funded.	0.5

26	1	Evidence of environmental staff capacity (Score 0-1)	IDP: The district still needs to have Environmental Inspectors in its territory to preserve the biodiversity and its natural resources. Challenge identified: Lack of environmental management.	0	Environmental management is a district function, not clear how to be implemented to fit the district plan. Staff inadequate Devolution of services not yet complete pending district function. LEDET willing to allocate budget and assist. Organogram shows Environmental Services Manager deals with waste, cemetery, parks.	0	8.1.14 Environmental Profile - The municipality established a unit that will deal with issues of environment - however the SDF: S2.3.19 Environmental Management - The organisational structure of the Elias Motsoaledi Local Municipality is also not structured to deal efficiently with this function. IDP: 9.3. DEPARTMENTAL CORE FUNCTIONS - Environmental Management falls under Community Services. The IDP reflects poor environmental function.	0.5	IDP: Lack of capacity in respect of bylaws enforcement staff and equipment may hamper proper management of solid waste disposal sites. Organogram does not indicate an environmental officer/manager.	0	IDP: SWOT analysis for GTM spatial rationale: Strength - Environment sub-unit established.	1	IDP: S2.2.7 KFA 7: Environmental analysis: Insufficient capacity on environmental management issues. Organogram shows no dedicated env. Staff. Although IDP states 'Strengthen the role of the Environmental Management Committee' and 'Capacitate the environmental officials in environmental management, compliance and enforcement training'. And IDP: To provide relevant training to the environmental officials	0.5	No organogram. However, WDM has Nozi Molteno as Environmental Management Official from National DEA, but staff not adequate for environmental management. The Environmental Management Policy indicates an Environmental Management Division (questioned).	0.5	IDP: Sub-programme: Open Space Management: Development of an environment management plan, Appointment of environmental management officer to monitor and co-ordinate all environmental matters, Conduct awareness campaigns on caring and managing our environment. (TO APPOINT THEREFORE 0.5 score). Directorate: Environmental Management exists but deals with parks and gardens rather than biodiversity.	0.5	IDP: 11.6 Bela-Bela Workplace Skills Development Plan - Introduction to Environmental Management;	0.5
----	---	--	---	---	--	---	--	-----	---	---	--	---	--	-----	--	-----	---	-----	---	-----

27	1	Key institutional issues (Score 0-1). A score of 1 is allocated if institutional issues recognize environmental element/climate change.	IDP S2.6.3. Overall Challenges (Financial Viability): 1. Lack of capacity – training, 2. Lack of asset management; 3. Insufficient Office space; 4. Lack of internal control; 5. Non-compliance; 8. Lack of communication channels with external stakeholders; 9. Inadequate information security 10. Non adherence to timelines; 11. Interference on Supply Chain Management and Payments processes; 12. Promulgation of by-laws; 13. Cash Management Security; 14. Low collection rate; 15. Insufficient credit control measures; 17. Non adherence to cash flow management; 18. Over commitment of budget. Governance challenges: internal control weakness, inadequate resources, inconsistent practises, lack of policies, lack of investigative skills, uncoordinated activities, fallible ICT systems. Performance management issues-Setting unrealistic targets; - Late submission of reports; - Negative perceptions and attitudes with regard to performance in general; - PMS Manager’s post has been vacant since 2011. Lack of capacity above.	1	Inadequate corporate/institutional capacity. Ineffective functioning of Inter Governmental Relations (IGR) structures impacts on good governance. The current powers and functions limits effective water and sanitation management, revenue enhancement, and accountability. Lack of access of land for development. S17.20 Institutional plan - identifies challenges. Lack of capacity above.	1	IDP: Major financial challenges to meet or offer the skills required by both councilors and officials. Retention of skilled staff. S8.2.10A. EMLM SWOT analysis: Ø Limited human capital; Ø Budgetary constraints; Ø Office space; Ø Delays in dis/approval of applications; Ø Inefficient implementation of by-laws; Ø Lack of office space; Ø lack of equipment, vehicles etc.; Weak inter-departmental coordination; <b>Lack of environmental awareness workshops and forum; Poor internal and external communication. Refer above awareness, however this is stated in the SDF rather than the IDP.</b>	0.5	IDP: Several institutional challenges, e.g. limited office space, attract and retain skilled staff, limited financial resources to sustain transportation of ward committees and communities. Limited revenue base . The MTAS flags two worrying points: (i) inadequate institutional capacity (ii) ineffective functioning of the IGR (Intergovernmental Relations) structures. Also, critical skills needs within the municipal council are legal (LLB), Town Planning, engineering (PR) (civil), Risk Management etc. SWOT Analysis-Limited revenue base, -Poor policy enforcement; - Underutilisation on key programmes; - Inadequate project management; -- Under-spending of Conditional Grant; - inadequate communication amongst internal stakeholders; - Ineffective demand management; - Ineffective participatory management	0.5	Poor organizational culture resulting in poor, service standards and turnaround time, - Inadequate utilization of workforce, - Skills shortage, - Inadequate contract management, - Lack of monitoring and evaluation for LLF, - Bloated organizational structure, - Delegation of authorities not clearly defined.	0.5	IDP S2.7.1: Lack of coordination between Directorates and Departments in ensuring the protection of the environment, limited capacity, lack of technical skill, EIA delays. IDP S 2.6.6 KFA 52: Inter Governmental Relations: Unstructured engagements with other spheres of government by line departments; Lack of interaction between different spheres of government; Non existence of IGR forum.	1	INSTITUTIONAL & ORGANIZATIONAL DEVELOPMENT CHALLENGES: Ø Inadequate institutional capacity due to lack of resources to fund the organizational structure; Ø Lack of service delivery by – laws and implementation; Ø Office space. SWOT Analysis: Weaknesses: Limited internal funding, inefficient management (various), inadequate office space, non-attendance of cluster meetings, inability to retain skilled staff and staff turnover. Threats: Insufficient external funding, Poor Co-operation from sector departments and local municipalities, Inconsistent attendance of IGR structures meetings by sector departments and local municipalities	0.5	<b>Chapter Eight – Institutional Analysis not in current IDP or previous 2.</b> § Inadequate Institutional Capacity (LED section). Other section includes: • Organisational structure not aligned to IDP; • Shortage of skilled staff; • Poor implementation of policies and procedures; • Poor law enforcement; • Inadequate oversight; • Lack of responsiveness to service delivery queries; • Inadequate compliance to municipal legislations and regulations; • Ineffective records management; • No permanent staff in LED unit; • Non adherence to the code of conduct; General lack of capacity and skills development; • Under spending of MIG fund. Political change, disintegration of district; and sector department.	0.5	IDP - Table: 69 Institutional SWOT Analysis: 1. Staff shortages in some departments due to moratorium by Council; 2. Lack of skills/ capacity at the lower levels; 3. Service providers do not always respond on time for emergencies; 4. Lack of adequate funds for training; 5. Lack of strategy for skills retention; 1. Delays in service delivery; 2. Delays in programmes/ projects with implementation; 3. Possible failure to respond to emergencies; 4. Constant postponement of Council meetings.	0.5
28	1	Adequate stakeholder engagement (LEDET, SANParks, Working for Water) (Score 0-1)	IDP: Appears to be relatively good, with LEDET projects included, although no working for water projects clearly indicated.	0.5	IDP: Project: Intergovernmental relations. No LEDET projects, but includes Dept of Agriculture Landcare and alien clearing.	0.5	IDP Table 8 shows provincial and sector department role players. However, S8.2.10A. EMLM SWOT analysis: Poor internal and external communication. Projects include LEDET and DEA, EPWP but not all projects as per other municipalities.	0.5	IDP: Appears to be relatively good, based on projects indicating responsible agents, LEDET, Agriculture etc, although no working for water projects clearly indicated.	0.5	Based on projects by other stakeholders, stakeholder engagement appears to be good. IDP states - EPWP not identified as a means to provide jobs, although EPWP grants etc. No working for water projects clearly indicated, or other LEDET environmental programmes.	0.5	Based on projects by other stakeholders, stakeholder engagement appears to be good. However, point above identifies inadequate intergovernmental liaison.	0.5	Based on projects by other stakeholders, stakeholder engagement appears to be good. However, SWOT analysis states: Poor Co-operation from sector departments and local municipalities. Town Planner, Mr Phatu Siebi confirmed this.	0.5	Based on projects by other stakeholders, stakeholder engagement appears to be good. IDP Swot Analysis strength: Involvement of stakeholders and the community. However, refer WDM Swot Analysis.	0.5	As per Mookgophong, apart from Swot Analysis result.	0.5
29		Municipal biodiversity specific documents																		

29.1	1	Municipal BSP / Cons Plan (Score 0-1). Provide references to provincial biodiversity plans & incorporation into final desired spatial outcome	IDP: Reference to, what appears to be the Limpopo C-Plan v1 (2011). SDF: Not sourced to assess. Final SDF Map sourced includes environmentally sensitive areas, but no biodiversity maps to assess.	0	IDP: No. SDF: MAP 3: NATURAL ENVIRONMENT. But map not in document to assess.	0	No reference to Limpopo C-Plan v1 (2011) & v2 (2013) included. Environmental maps of SDF not in document to assess.	0	IDP and SDF: No reference to CBA or C-Plan. SDF has maps but not in document to assess.	0	IDP and SDF: No reference to CBA or C-Plan. SDF with conservation Zones and sensitive areas identified. Cannot determine these zones on the maps in document (resolution poor), but the zones do not appear to be present on maps.	0	No. IDP: No reference to CBA or C-Plan. SDF: No, predates C-Plans but should have been updated. Conservation Zone in Map but very poor data.	0	IDP: No reference to CBA or C-Plan. SDF: No reference to CBA, but EMF zones in final SDF maps that protect biodiversity.	0	IDP & SDF: No. Conservation Zone and Open Space System is final component to SDF map.	0	IDP: No. SDF: No. SDF 2006 probably pre-dates MCBP availability. WDM SDF 2011 extract includes environmental sensitive areas and WBR (not MCBP categories).	0
29.2	1	EMF (Score 0-1)	IDP: No.	0	IDP: No. SDF: Provincial Environmental Management Framework	0	IDP & SDF: No.	0	IDP & SDF: No.	0	IDP & SDF: No.	0	IDP: No.	0	IDP: No. SDF 2014: Yes, DM EMF.	1	IDP: No.	0	IDP: No.	0
29.3	1	EMP (Score 0-1)	IDP: Section on Integrated EMP.	1	17.9 Integrated Environmental Management Programme. Approved by Council on 29 March 2005.	1	IDP: The municipality has developed a draft environmental Management Plan.	1	IDP: Developed and adopted the Environmental Integrated Programme in 2003, but requires review. SDF 2007 indicates an environmental management sector plan.	1	IDP and SDF: No.	0	IDP: No.	0	IDP: EMP for development applications.	1	IDP: The municipality needs to develop an environmental management plan which must give rise to intensifying recycling initiatives.	0	IDP: Sector Plans: The municipality prepared and adopted the IEMP in May 2012.	1
29.4	1	SoER (Score 0-1)	IDP: IEMP: This IEMP has set the basis upon which the development of the SDM State of Environmental Report is formulated.	1	IDP: No.	0	IDP: No.	0	IDP and SDF 2007: No.	0	IDP & SDF: No.	0	IDP: No.	0	IDP: No.	0	IDP: No.	0	IDP & SDF: No.	0
29.5	1	SEA (Score 0-1)	IDP: No.	0	IDP: No.	0	SDF indicates the legal requirement for an SEA, but no section specifically dealing with this or an explanation or an SEA document conducted by environmental professionals.	0	IDP and SDF 2007: No.	0	IDP & SDF: No.	0	IDP: No.	0	IDP: No. SDF states requirement for a strategic assessment of IDP, but no stand-alone document or section thereon.	0	IDP: No.	0	IDP & SDF: No. SDF states township establishment will be subject to SEAs, but no evidence of an SEA for the SDF.	0
29.6	1	Plans/budget to implement above biodiversity specific tools (Score 0-1)	IDP: No.	0	IDP: No.	0	S2.3.19 Environmental Management - currently no Environmental Management Plan in place - outdated SDF as IDP indicates EMP.	0	IDP and SDF 2007: No.	0	IDP: There is a need for the Municipality to develop Environmental management policy and strategy in making sure that the environment is managed properly.	1	IDP: No.	0	No.	0	IDP: The municipality needs to develop an environmental management plan which must give rise to intensifying recycling initiatives.	0.5	No.	0
30.1	1	BSP / Cons Plan - current	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0
30.2	1	EMF - current	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0
30.3	1	EMP - current	Date unknown, but presumably out-dated.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	IDP 2014/15 S5. BELA-BELA INTEGRATED ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PLAN: The municipality prepared and adopted the IEMP in May 2012.	1
30.4	1	SoER - current	Date unknown, but presumably out-dated.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0

30.5	1	SEA - current	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0
31	1	Other environmental management tools other than those indicated above	IDP SIEMP: This IEMP has set the basis upon which the development of the SDM environmental policy is formulated. This policy will be important in guiding the other ecosystems plans.	1	No.	0	SDF S2.3.19 Environmental Management - currently no Environmental Management Plan in place. Will formulate proposals regarding the personnel/ structures that need to be put in place within Council.	0	No.	0	No.	0	IDP states 'Strengthen the role of the Environmental Management Committee' and 'Capacitate the environmental officials in environmental management, compliance and enforcement training'	0.5	Environmental Management Policy - 12 January 2012 - water resources, energy efficiency etc.	1	IDP: The municipality needs to develop environmental by-laws with appropriate punitive mechanism and action plan.	1	IDP S10. ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT FRAMEWORK: Waterberg District Municipality adopted the Waste Management Framework in 2007. Demonstrates lack of understanding.	0
		<b>GENERAL COMMENTS:</b>	Reference to, what appears to be the Limpopo C-Plan v1 (2011). No SDF or LED to assess.		3.3 Priority Strategies: Environmental Management. Outcome: % achievement of <b>environmental targets</b> in the Environmental Assessment Plan. <b>What are the targets?</b> SDF very out-dated and not reviewed. If reviewed it had the opportunity to incorporate MBCP 2006 or BSP 2014. Poor quality data. IDP document formatting - poor.		No CBA Map. An EMP but no other biodiversity specific documents, or appropriate programmes in place. Review of Spatial Development Framework indicated in IDP.		No CBA Map. SDF outdated. Environmental analysis in SDF inadequate.		No CBA Map. SDF and LED outdated. Lack of environmental issues, projects & programmes yet an environmental sub-unit established? Environmental analysis poor, no mention of climate change or wetlands. Monitoring and evaluation of SDF recommended annually with implementation forum.		No CBA Map. No LED document sourced. Environmental analysis etc. of SDF inadequate. Conflicting statements regarding environmental officials, however acknowledge that the term environment is frequently used with reference to health, sanitation, infrastructure rather than biodiversity. Good structuring of environmental issues. No EMP.		No CBA Map. EMF for DM integrated into SDF. An EMP for all developments (which ensures protection of wetlands and river buffer areas etc.). Translation of national and provincial priorities, strategies, outcomes not always correctly interpreted e.g. MUNICIPAL STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE: 'To effectively manage finances and improve sustainability: translated from provincial's 'Sustainable Resource management and use' (Limpopo Provincial Government, 1 of 10 Priority Areas).		Table, Strategic Priorities in relation with National Priorities - NATIONAL = LOW CARBON ECONOMY; LIMPOPO ECONOMIC GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT PLAN = Environmental and natural resources development programme and Green economy and creation of green jobs - MUNICIPAL STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE: To promote and enforce acceptable environmental practices AND MUNICIPAL PRIORITY = SOLID WASTE? The interpretation of national and provincial strategies/priorities is not always logical. <b>Very poor structuring of IDP and sections missing.</b>		A 2011 SDF appears to be available according to the WDM SDF, however, only able to source 2006 document.	
<b>Max Score</b>	<b>62</b>	<b>Total Score</b>	Maximum Score 60	<b>30.5</b>	Maximum Score 59	<b>25.5</b>	Maximum Score 59	<b>27</b>	Maximum Score 60	<b>25.5</b>	Maximum Score 60	<b>21.5</b>	Maximum Score 57	<b>25.5</b>	Maximum Score 60	<b>34.5</b>	Maximum Score 59	<b>28</b>	Maximum Score 60	<b>32.5</b>
<b>minus LUMS</b>	<b>61</b>		Minus criterion 5 LUM Scheme		Minus Criterion 5 LUM Scheme		Minus Criterion 5 LUM Scheme		Minus Criterion 5 LUM Scheme		Includes criterion 5 LUMS		Minus criterion 5 LUMS		Minus Criterion 5 LUM Scheme		Minus Criterion 5 LUM Scheme		Includes criterion 5 LUMS	
<b>minus TFCA</b>	<b>60</b>	<b>Percentage</b>	Greater Limpopo TFCA not in DM	<b>50.8</b>	Greater Limpopo TFCA not in LM	<b>43.2</b>	Greater Limpopo TFCA not in LM	<b>45.8</b>	Greater Limpopo TFCA not in LM	<b>42.5</b>	Greater Limpopo TFCA not in LM	<b>35.8</b>	TFCA not in LM	<b>44.7</b>	TFCA not in LM	<b>57.5</b>	Greater Limpopo TFCA not in LM	<b>47.5</b>	Greater Limpopo TFCA not in LM	<b>54.2</b>
<b>minus BR</b>	<b>58</b>	<b>Category</b>	BR in DM	<b>D</b>	Biosphere Reserve not in LM	<b>E</b>	Biosphere Reserve not in LM	<b>E</b>	BR in LM	<b>E</b>	Biosphere Reserve not in LM	<b>E</b>	BR not in LM	<b>E</b>	Waterberg BR included.	<b>D</b>	BR in DM	<b>D</b>	BR in DM	<b>D</b>
<b>minus NPAES</b>	<b>57</b>	<b>Category</b>	NPAES in DM	<b>FAIR</b>	NPAES in LM	<b>POOR</b>	NPAES in LM	<b>POOR</b>	NPAES in LM	<b>POOR</b>	NPAES in LM	<b>POOR</b>	NPAES not in LM. PA and CA not in LM.	<b>POOR</b>		<b>FAIR</b>	NPAES in DM	<b>FAIR</b>	NPAES in DM	<b>FAIR</b>

**Table 16.** Mpumalanga Province: Nkangala District - Allocated scores for each criterion per municipality with a brief summary motivation indicating level of social-ecological content.

No	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Nkangala DM	Score	Dr JS Moroka LM	Score	Emakhazeni LM	Score	Emalahleni LM	Score	Steve Tshwete LM	Score	Thembisile Hani LM	Score	Victor Khanye (Old=Delmas) LM	Score
1.1	1	IDP (Score 0-1)	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1
1.2	1	LEDs (Score 0-1)	Y (Indicated in IDP)	1	Y	1	Y (Indicated in IDP)	1	Y (Indicated in IDP)	1	Y	1	Y (Indicated in IDP & summary 'report' sourced)	1	Y	1
1.3	1	SDF (Score 0-1)	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1
1.4	1	LUM Scheme (Score 0-1)	IDP: District has already undertaken the process to convert and translate Land Use Schemes into a Land Use Management System.	1	Y. (Indicated in SDF: The LM has a wall to wall Land Use Management Scheme (LUMS) according to which all development control matters are handled/ regulated. SDF S6.3: Majority of land falls under traditional authorities - challenge to the regulation of land development/ land use rights. The Municipality does not yet have a Land Use Management System/ Scheme (LUMS) in place? Conflicting statements in SDF). Refer Nkangala District.	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y. Town Planning Scheme - The Scheme Area shall be the area of jurisdiction of the Steve Tshwete Local Municipality	1	Y (Indicated in IDP)	1	Y (Indicated in IDP)	1
1.5	1	Annual Report	Y (DV downloaded from web)	1	Y	1	Y (DV downloaded)	1	Y (DV downloaded)	1	Y	1	Y	1		
1.6		Documents not sourced	LED		LUMS		LED		LED, LUMS		Not Applicable		LED		LUMS	
2.1	1	IDP up to date	No. 2013/2014. NDM DRAFT 2014/15 IDP REVIEW FRAMEWORK PLAN exists.	0.5	Yes. 2014/2015 (DV accessed)	1	Yes. 2014-2015 (DV uploaded)	1	Yes. 2014-2015	1	Yes. IDP Review 2014/2015	1	Yes. IDP 2014-2015.	1	Yes. 2014/2015	1
2.2	1	LEDs up to date	No. IDP: Local Economic Development Strategy: Under review	0	IDP states: 2010/2011 Local Economic Development strategy implementation plan. Sourced document - no date.	0	Adopted by Council In March 2007 with resolution number 01/03/07 and will be reviewed in 2011.	0	No. IDP: The municipality adopted its Local Economic Development towards the end of the 2011/2012 financial year.	0	No. 2006	0	LED. No date.	0	No. IDP: Status S03/02/2013	0
2.3	1	SDF up to date	Y. July 2014	1	Y. June 2014	1	Y. January 2015 (DV downloaded)	1	Yes. SDF 2013-2014	1	Yes. 2014	1	Yes. 2014	1	Yes. June 2014	1
2.4	1	LUM up to date	Dependant on LMS	0	The planning function was entrusted to NDM	0	No. 2010	0	No. Land Use Management Scheme, 2010	0	SDF 2014: Land Use Management Scheme (LUMS) in 2010	0	SDF 2014: Land Use Management Scheme (LUMS) in	0	A new Land Use Management Scheme (Town Planning Scheme) was	0

No	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Nkangala DM	Score	Dr JS Moroka LM	Score	Emakhazeni LM	Score	Emalahleni LM	Score	Steve Tshwete LM	Score	Thembisile Hani LM	Score	Victor Khanye (Old=Delmas) LM	Score
					(Province of Mpumalanga Provincial Gazette Volume 10 No. 959 date 26 May 2003), but can be de-proclaimed based on TP capacity.								2010. COGTA - development of a by-law will enable the municipality to adopt a new Land Use Management Scheme in terms of the by-law. The draft by-law has almost been completed and once adopted by Council, THLM will need to revise the existing LUMS within 3 years.		compiled and submitted during October 2013.	
2.5	1	Annual Report up to date	No. 2013-2014	0	No. 2012-2103	0	No. 2013 -2014	0	No. 2013 - 2014 (website)	0	Draft 2013-2014	0	Draft 2013-2014 (DV downloaded)	0	No. 2012 - 2013 (Draft Vol 1)	0
3.1	1	Summary biodiversity section or environmental analysis (Score 0-1). Score of 1 if IDP & SDF contain section.	IDP: S4.8.4 Issue 18: Environmental Management. (Poor - mainly Issues). S4.5.2.6. Conservation, tourism and culture. SDF: S4.6. ENVIRONMENTAL FEATURES. Annual Report: 7. INTRODUCTION TO ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION	1	IDP: Issue 17 - Waste & Environment Management. However, this is for waste management without an environmental analysis (Poor). Tourism and Conservation. SDF: 4.6 ENVIRONMENTAL FEATURES. LED has section on environment.	0.5	IDP: 3.4 Environmental Analysis (Biophysical, rivers, dams, vegetation, geology) (Poor). EMF noted in separate section. SDF: 4.5 Environmental Features	1	IDP: S8.2 ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT - no analysis and no environmental data from the SDF (Poor). SDF: 2.10 THE NATURAL ENVIRONMENT. STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE 3: PROTECT BIODIVERSITY AND AGRICULTURAL RESOURCES - Mpumalanga Biodiversity Plan. <b>Annexure maps not in SDF, but appear to be of settlements only.</b>	0.5	IDP: 8. Environmental Management, but no analysis (Poor). SDF: S4.6 ENVIRONMENTAL FEATURES. LED: No.	0.5	IDP S4.2. ENVIRONMENTAL ANALYSIS - Biophysical, vegetation, conservation, red data - One page (Poor). SDF: S4.6 ENVIRONMENTAL FEATURES - Figure 19 - MCBP 2006 biodiversity map. However, IDP does not include the MCBP - although might predate SDF - does not predate the MCBP.	0.5	IDP: S1.4.3 Biophysical Environment and S1.4.4 Biodiversity. Includes Threatened ecosystems, species, references Important and Necessary biodiversity, but not the C-Plan, two maps of vegetation status (error). (Poor). SDF: 4.6 ENVIRONMENTAL FEATURES	1
3.2	1	Does the SDF (& IDP) contain land use/development guidelines e.g. avoid wetlands or sensitive areas. (Score 0-1). Score of 1 if IDP & SDF contain section.	SDF: The Mpumalanga Biodiversity Conservation Plan Table 7: Land Use Suitability per Biodiversity Category	0.5	SDF: The Mpumalanga Biodiversity Conservation Plan Table 5: Land Use Suitability per Biodiversity Category.	0.5	SDF 2015: Table 6: Biodiversity Guidelines. IDP 2014: No, biodiversity section does not include maps or land use guidelines of MCBP 2007 from SDF 2014.	0.5	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE 3: PROTECT BIODIVERSITY AND AGRICULTURAL RESOURCES - The conservation of wetlands and protection of rivers. However, could be more detailed and map does not seem to align with MCBP. STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE 4: ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT AND JOB CREATION - Land Development Guidelines: wetlands, rivers, conservation areas and density requirements.	0.5	IDP: No. SDF: Table 5: Land Use Suitability per Biodiversity Category (The Mpumalanga Biodiversity Conservation Plan 2006).	0.5	SDF: SPROVINCIAL ENVIRONMENTAL GUIDELINES - The Mpumalanga Biodiversity Conservation Plan provides the following guidelines for un-transformed land with natural vegetation cover (see Table 4). Table 4: Land Use Suitability per Biodiversity Category. Not included in IDP.	0.5	SDF: The Mpumalanga Biodiversity Conservation Plan Table 6: Land Use Suitability per Biodiversity Category.	0.5

No	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Nkangala DM	Score	Dr JS Moroka LM	Score	Emakhazeni LM	Score	Emalahleni LM	Score	Steve Tshwete LM	Score	Thembisile Hani LM	Score	Victor Khanye (Old=Delmas) LM	Score
									Annexure A: Agriculture and Conservation: DENSITY and DEVELOPMENT GUIDELINES. IDP does not contain reference to guidelines.							
3.3	1	Cross referencing to environmental analysis/environmental concerns/biodiversity data & land use guidelines (Score 0-1)	Yes. IDP cross references AR, SDF & LED. IDP Chpt 6: ANALYSIS OF IDP & SECTOR PLANS ALIGNMENT. <b>(CRDP included in Thembisile Hani and Dr JS Moroka Local Municipalities)</b>	1	IDP CHAPTER 7: SPATIAL RATIONALE. IDP probably predates SDF 2014. IDP references LED. <b>(CRDP included in Dr JS Moroka Local Municipalities - Implementation of CRDP projects supported • Thembisile Hani • Dr JS Moroka)</b> . SDF: 3.1 IDP RELATED PRIORITY ISSUES. S4.14.2 LED PLAN. S4.10 - 4.13 - infrastructure backlogs etc.	1	IDP references SDF, LED, EMF. SDF references IDP, LED and EMF. SDF environmental data could be better referenced in IDP, but IDP predates SDF 2015. <b>(CRDP noted in IDP but focus area not indicated. SDF map indicates CRDP focus area)</b>	1	IDP does not cross reference to the SDF environment adequately, but is referenced.	0.5	IDP: No. SDF: 3.1 IDP RELATED PRIORITY ISSUES. LED 2006: IDP referenced but not SDF - possible that no SDF was compiled in 2006?	0.5	Yes, however IDP references 2010 SDF which probably means the SDF 2014 was done before the IDP. SDF references IDP. LED forms part of IDP. Annual report references IDP. <b>(CRDP for Ward 8 and 17)</b> .	1	Yes, however IDP references 2010 SDF. IDP probably predates the SDF 2014. SDF references IDP. LED forms part of IDP. SDF references LED (indicates outdated LED etc.).	1
3.4	1	Includes environmental priorities (e.g. CBA, ecologically sensitive areas) & risks (Score 0-1). If in both IDP and SDF, Score = 1	SDF: Figure 21: Mpumalanga Biodiversity Assessment: MBCP. Figure 34: SDF map with conservation areas. IDP: Figure 11: Activity concentration types - indicates irreplaceable, Protected Areas. S3.9 'environmentally highly significant areas and important and necessary areas. Figure 20: Spatial Structure and Economic Activities within NDM. See point 19 regarding risks. Risks not identified for the NB environments.	1	SDF: Figure 18a = MBCP 2006. <b>Map colouring difficult to interpret.</b> IDP: No map or risks. IDP Tourism & Conservation (Spatial Rationale): The central-southern portion of the Dr JS Moroka municipal area should be earmarked for tourism and conservation purposes.	0.5	SDF: Figure 18a = MBCP 2006. IDP: Does not include this map or guidelines, although includes EMF extracts but no maps either. IDP: 5.1.11. ISSUE 11: ENVIRONMENTAL AND WASTE MANAGEMENT - few issues identified but not considered adequate.	0.5	SDF: STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE 3: PROTECT BIODIVERSITY AND AGRICULTURAL RESOURCES - Mpumalanga Biodiversity Plan. However, this is not indicated on the Figure 26, which appears to be conceptual. SDF: Issues - Based on NDM SOER: • Land: The Grasslands are in a very poor condition as more than half have been lost. • Water Resources: 83 % of Emalahleni's rivers fall into the Critically Endangered class. Pollution (of surface and groundwater), Waste management; Conservation: threatened with ecosystem collapse. Vulnerability: The main issues identified are	0.5	IDP: Does not include environmental section. SDF: MCBP 2006 biodiversity map, however, important areas not integrated into final SDF.	0.5	SDF: Figure 16 = MBCP 2006. SDF Figure 34 - extensive agriculture appears to be in all important MBCP areas. <b>Map colouring difficult to interpret.</b> IDP Environmental analysis: No map or risks.	0.5	SDF: Figure 16 = MBCP 2006. IDP: Maps based on ecosystem status etc. but incorrect mapping. Environmental risks/issues section is lacking in documents, although SDF includes S4.6.8 DISTRICT WIDE ENVIRONMENTAL CONCERNS that includes some risks but focuses more on environmental management issues. IDP: Biodiversity section indicates air pollution and green house gases. IDP - Table 39: SWOT Analysis Developments in the wetlands, Illegal sand mining, environmental pollution, Uncleared Dolomite sites (severe injuries), Decreasing water table due to mining activities and farming, Poor management of Mining Exploration/Development and rehabilitation.	0.5

No	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Nkangala DM	Score	Dr JS Moroka LM	Score	Emakhazeni LM	Score	Emalahleni LM	Score	Steve Tshwete LM	Score	Thembisile Hani LM	Score	Victor Khanye (Old=Delmas) LM	Score
4	1	Summary biodiversity maps (Score 0 -1). If maps are in IDP & SDF, Score = 1.	SDF: Yes, but not adequately represented in the IDP. Refer above.	0.5	SDF: Yes MBCP (2006), but not in the IDP.	0.5	SDF2014: Yes MBCP (2006), but not in the IDP. SDF2015: Yes MBSP (2014) - IDP pre dates SDF.	0.5	housing located in the flood lines, sinkholes etc. IDP: Refer point 3.1. Refer above. SDF: Figure 26. References MBCP but the map does not reflect the plan.	0.5	IDP: No. SDF: MCBP 2006. Soil types, land cover	0.5	SDF: Yes MBCP (2006), but not in the IDP.	0.5	IDP: Maps included but do not include MBCP 2006 which the SDF 2010 should have incorporated. SDF: Yes.	0.5
5	1	Does the LUM Scheme include a conservation zone or at minimum consider environmental protection (Score 0-1)	Not applicable - Depends on LM	0	No LUMS sourced to assess.	0	S6.2.3 Environmental Conservation. MANAGEMENT ZONES KEY MAP - Biodiversity Maps 1-4. 7. CHAPTER SEVEN: MANAGEMENT ZONES - based on MBCP with land use guidelines. S7.2.1.2 Land Uses suited to the Bio-Diversity Categories	1	No Conservation zone. The word conservation and environment is not indicated. No building of any nature shall be erected within that part of a property which is likely to be inundated by floodwater as indicated on the Map and/or marked to that effect with the symbol FL in Column 7of the Zoning Register (Schedule II). Dolomite areas also indicated.	0	No. Steve Tshwete Town Planning Scheme – 2004 (Final). August 2004. NOT 2010 according to SDF.	0	No. Town Planning Scheme August 2004. Conditions applicable to townships or even in dolomite areas or on land with detrimental soil conditions - draining soils for development.	0	No LUMS to assess, but unlikely therefore score 0.	0
6	2	Climate change & mitigation measures (Score 0-2). The Score of 2 only attained if proper spatial guidelines indicated in SDF (& IDP) e.g. floodlines, buffers, high water yielding areas.	IDP: S4.8.4.4. Climate Change - District developed a Climate Change Mitigation and Response Strategy (2013). Indicates planning outside floodplains. Thembisile Hani Local Municipality: § schools (i.e. Nyabela, Buhlebenfundo, Bhundu, Kgantso, Rorhopane School); are flooded (ward 11). IDP: S4.8.5.5. Waste Recycling Initiatives. SDF S4.6.8 CLIMATE CHANGE Annual Report: 7.1 CONTINUED IMPLEMENTATION OF THE NDM CLIMATE CHANGE MITIGATION AND RESPONSE STRATEGY. To develop AQMP. No map on floodprone areas or 1:100 requirement.	1.5	IDP: Climate change not indicated. DM CC Strategy not included. SDF only indicates national outcome 10: Protection and Enhancement of Environmental Assets and Natural Resources - Output 2: Reduced greenhouse gas emissions, climate change impacts and improved air/atmospheric quality. Air pollution is an LM function but no plan/strategy. SDF Table 16. Buffer zone. LUM Scheme: No building of any nature shall be erected within that part of a property which is likely to be	0	IDP S: S5.1.11.1 ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT - Climate change. Disaster Incidents in the Province in 2013/14 financial year: flooding, disaster management due to climate change. Lacks an Air Quality Management Plan. IDP: Ward 2- still awaiting solar panel rollouts. Unfunded electricity project - solar panels. LUMS: S11.3 Water Supply and Management Directives - 1: 100 flood directive (NWA). SDF: MBSP - aquatic map Figure 18b - ESA: Strategic Water Source Areas. Guidelines need to be articulated better.	1.5	SDF: Development of mitigation and adaptation strategies to reduce vulnerabilities with special reference to climate change, erosion, flooding and natural disasters. IDP: 1.7.2 Change Drivers - Climate change - but no meaningful inclusion. IDP: 7.1 LED - Green energy can be considered a priority to reduce the environmental impact of coal generated energy in and around Emalahleni. IDP: Solar energy installed in some houses; plan to develop local AQMP.	0.5	IDP: Climate change identified as a Threat, and included under Environmental Management. 2.8. Greenhouse Gas Emission in Steve Tshwete Local Municipality. IDP PROJECTS: To contribute towards the mitigation of climate change impacts - Support the Greenest municipality competition; PLANTING OF TREES PULLENSHOPE PARKS AND SIDEWALKS; RENOVATION GREENHOUSE COMPLETE WITH IRRIGATION; SIDEWALK TREES HENDRINA/KWAZA; To provide integrated energy efficiency	1.5	IDP: Climate change not mentioned. Table 6.1.2.2: Physical hazards found to pose the highest risk within the municipality - Communities building houses near river banks and within flood lines. SDF: S4.6.7 - NDM CC Mitigation & Response Strategy. But no mention of IDP housing in flood lines etc, only IDP Issue: Need for better storm water control in areas prone to flooding. LED: Climate change projects (Refer criteria 10).	1	IDP: S1.4.3 Biophysical Environment notes climate change. SDF S: 4.6.6 CLIMATE CHANGE - notes NDM Climate Change Mitigation and Response Strategy (2013). IDP S 2.1.4 Roads and Storm Water inadequate storm water drainage systems and as a result houses are flooded during raining seasons. IDP: green economy - installing solar panels (Eskom project on hold), energy saving lights, gas from landfill sites for energy etc. No map on floodprone areas or 1:100 requirement. Recycling in 2013/14 with the development of a Waste recycling strategy - need DEDET funding. IDP: Provision of solar panels in all wards.	1

No	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Nkangala DM	Score	Dr JS Moroka LM	Score	Emakhazeni LM	Score	Emalahleni LM	Score	Steve Tshwete LM	Score	Thembisile Hani LM	Score	Victor Khanye (Old=Delmas ) LM	Score
					inundated by floodwater as indicated on the Map and/or marked to that effect with the symbol FL in Column 7 of the Zoning Register.						management - All new and existing fittings to be aligned to the energy saving fittings. SDF S4.6.8 CLIMATE CHANGE - NDM drafted a Climate Change Mitigation and Response Strategy (CCMRS) in 2013. Greening of cities by planting trees. 8000 trees are propagated and 5000 planted annually in line with our Green Development Strategy as a contribution towards the mitigation of climate change. 6.3. Strategies, objectives and projects: Obtaining carbon credits.Reducing carbon emissions. IDP: Roads and Stormwater: Develop the floodline master plan, use floodline plan to develop; but no map on floodprone areas or 1:100 requirement.					
7	2	Key biodiversity legislation to demonstrate awareness for compliance (Score 0-2)	IDP: NEMWA, NEMAQ. Abbreviation for NEMA, but not NWA or BA. 4.8.4.4 Implementation of the NEMA: Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations 2010. SDF: Notes NEMA, NEMQA. AR: 8.2.1 IMPLEMENTATION OF THE NEMA: ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT ASSESSMENT (EIA) REGULATIONS 2010	1	NEMWA and NWA.	1	NEMWA (NEMA noted under NEMWA for waste management), NWA. No legislative subsection.	1	IDP: No legislation. SDF mentions NEMA and Agricultural Act but not adequate.	0	IDP: 8. Environmental Management - Legislative requirements. SDF: Inadequate compliance to environmental legislation (NEMA); NEMAQ indicated. LUMS: National Environmental Management Act 1988, the Environmental Conservation Act 1989 and the EIA Regulations. IDP: EIA FOR LANDFILL SITE DEVELOPMENT	1.5	IDP & SDF: No section on legislation. IDP: S5.1.5. Waste Management and Environmental Health 2 illegal dumping sites not in compliance with the Environmental Management Act	0	IDP: No. SDF: Indicates poor compliance with NEMA, NWA and NEMQA.	0.5

No	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Nkangala DM	Score	Dr JS Moroka LM	Score	Emakhazeni LM	Score	Emalahleni LM	Score	Steve Tshwete LM	Score	Thembisile Hani LM	Score	Victor Khanye (Old=Delmas) LM	Score
8	1	Environmental projects (Score 0 - 1)	IDP S5.2.3.2 Projects for priority Issue 20: Economic Development and Job Creation: Construction of Waste Recycling Centre; Integrated Management Plans (Mdala & Mkhombo Dam Nature Reserves). S5.2.6.4 Projects for priority Issue 18: Environmental Management: Rehabilitation of wetlands Twee-fontein K township, planting trees, air quality, waste disposal. Air quality management plan to be developed (budget). <b>NO UPDATING REVIEW OF EMP etc.</b>	0.5	IDP Projects: Cleaning of the river streams - Feasibility Study and Business Plan, Glass Recycling Facility; Waste & environmental management - EPWP/Community Work Programme. SDBIP indicates Key Focus Area (KFA) - waste management (glass recycling plant), KFA Conservation = upgrade two nature reserves. <b>NOT ADEQUATE</b>	0.5	IDP: Programme: Environmental Management: Funded Projects - Environmental awareness campaigns; Monitoring of drinking water and <b>waste water effluent quality</b> . Programme: Poverty Alleviation and job creation- Establishment of recycling projects. Programmes / projects associated with waste management - rehabilitation of old landfill sites or illegal dumping sites, wastewater effluent monitoring. Unfunded: Appointment of a service provider for sampling at Emthonjeni sewage purification plant as per license conditions; Establishment of an in-house laboratory; Development of an Air Pollution Management Plan. UNFUNDED ELECTRICITY - Installation of solar panels.	0.5	IDP Projects: S8.7 SAFETY AND ENVIRONMENT 5 YEAR PLAN: Air Quality Management Plan. Review of EMP. S7.3.1 ECONOMIC GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT 5 YEAR PLAN: - EPWP (but does not specify project type). S5 PHYSICAL INFRASTRUCTURE AND ENERGY EFFICIENCY 5 YEAR PLAN: Green Drop ratings. S14 MINING HOUSES PROJECTS & PROGRAMMES: hola waste Recycling project, Environmental Project - BBBEE beneficiaries; Conservation Education - Eco schools (Environmental educational awareness programme for schools in Mpumalanga). Externally funded: Refurbishment of Rietspruit - Green Drop. BHP Billiton Project funded - Mpuma Waste Buy Back Centre: Phase 2 - recycling	1	IDP PROJECTS 2013/2014: To contribute towards the mitigation of climate change impacts - Support the Greenest municipality competition; PLANTING OF TREES PULLENSHOPE PARKS AND SIDEWALKS; RENOVATION GREENHOUSE COMPLETE WITH IRRIGATION; SIDEWALK TREES HENDRINA/KWAZA; To provide integrated energy efficiency management - All new and existing fittings to be aligned to the energy saving fittings. PURCHASE EQUIPMENT TO MONITOR AIR POLLUTION. <b>NOT ADEQUATE - EMP?</b> IDP S6.3. Strategies, objectives and projects: 1) To ensure maintenance of greenest municipality status; 2) Waste Management - Implementation of waste to energy project; Green house gases inventory baseline developed; Establish school recycling projects; Establish environmental clubs; Conduct awareness campaigns; 3) Electricity: Alternative energy; 4) Sanitation: Green drop status; 5) Roads and Stormwater: Develop the floodline master plan, use floodline plan to develop; 6) Parks - develop Municipal	1	LED Strategy Implementation Plan - several DEDET projects - Climate change literacy programme; Tree Planting; Adopt a spot programme; Water Clean-up Programme; Greenest Municipality Competition; Climate Change Programme for schools; Water programme for Pre-schools. IDP: Job creation through EPWP, water conservation and demand management programme for water loss (IDP Project: Integrating CRDP project into IDP). <b>Environmental projects inadequate.</b>	0.5	IDP: Table 41 - Review WSDP, Table 42 - Provision of solar panels, Energy saving projects, Table 43: Stormwater master plan (Issue - flooding), LED projects: Recycling of industrial and domestic waste, Greening and open space Management. Unfunded: recycling in 2013/14 with the development of a Waste recycling strategy - but need DEDET Funds to implement recycling plant, to investigate EPWP and recycling initiatives. S6 SDBIP Scorecard by Department KPA Measurement and Projects - S6.5: Rehabilitation of landfill sites, greening initiatives, EPWP projects recycling (LED projects), Development of a waste recycling strategy. THEN Table MP311 Victor Khanye - Supporting Table SA25 Budgeted monthly revenue and expenditure: Environmental protection has no budget (although all projects above fall under waste management etc.). Provision of solar panels in all wards.	1

No	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Nkangala DM	Score	Dr JS Moroka LM	Score	Emakhazeni LM	Score	Emalahleni LM	Score	Steve Tshwete LM	Score	Thembisile Hani LM	Score	Victor Khanye (Old=Delmas ) LM	Score
											<p>open space plan; Conservation of green areas, wetlands and ecosystems; 8) Climate change mitigation: Upgrading the green lungs; Develop a bird watching facility and eco centre at Athlone Dam; Support the Greenest municipality competition by: Rehabilitation of Foetup wetland, Play a key role in winning the Greenest Municipality Competition. LED: Environmental Project – EPWP - Environmental awareness campaigns – Establish a programme to assist in environmental matters e.g. recycling; Tourism and product development: Environmental conservation; Establish a policy on environmental issues. Recycling projects The Mhluzi Buy back centre is operational. Implementation of office recycling project in progress</p>					
9	2	Water quality and quantity with linkage to IDP projects (Score 0-2)	IDP: Green Drop per Municipality. SDF District wide concerns: (ii) Water Quality Management: - Poor water quality due to industrial and agricultural activities, lack of and inadequate (ageing) sewer infrastructure; - Poor monitoring and enforcement of water legislation (e.g. NWA); - Inadequate water quality management	1	IDP ISSUE 2: SANITATION - MUNICIPAL WASTE WATER PLANT - contravening NWA General Authorisations page 134. The operation and maintenance budget will be used to ensure that the D.O meters of both Municipal waste water plants are installed to ensure	1	IDP: Blue- and Green Drop Certification programs compels the municipality to have a water quality monitoring program which is costly & only two full time Environmental Health Practitioner. 15. WATER SAMPLE TESTING ANALYSIS: SEWERAGE SAMPLES (GREEN DROP STANDARDS). 2. MONITORING OF	1	IDP: S2.6.1. Waste water services ranked 13th in Green Drop Report, which is high risk. 4.4.2 Sanitation: Green Drop performance. S5 PHYSICAL INFRASTRUCTURE AND ENERGY EFFICIENCY 5 YEAR PLAN: Green Drop ratings. KFA 7: Water & Sanitation Infrastructure: Improve Green Drop Plan.	1	IDP: Strategic Objective: 3. Sanitation - Regulations for the Blue and Green Drop processes. To ensure compliance with Green Water Requirements in a sustainable way by maintaining a High Quality Service throughout the MP313 area. IDP Possible Project/ Activities: Samples	1.5	IDP S5.1.2.2. Waste Water Treatment Plant - releases raw sewerage into the environment. Project: Establishment of a catchment source and <b>recycling of waste water. No programme or response to issue.</b> SDF states Water Service Development Plan (WSDP) indicated as required	0.5	IDP: WSDP exists, for review. The municipality subscribes to the requirements specified by both the Blue and Green Drop incentive programme. Refer NDM district wide concern regarding poor water quality etc.	1

No	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Nkangala DM	Score	Dr JS Moroka LM	Score	Emakhazeni LM	Score	Emalahleni LM	Score	Steve Tshwete LM	Score	Thembisile Hani LM	Score	Victor Khanye (Old=Delmas ) LM	Score
			capacity (human resource). Refer S4.8.4.5 Strategies (Action Plans) - WQ. Water Master Plan indicates - Recycling of Sewer Effluent for industry		National compliance. But no Green Drop ratings or project. WSDP under review. <b>AWARENESS GOOD BUT NOT ADEQUATE RESPONSE STRATEGY. SDF: Table 16: DRJSMLM Capital Investment Framework Priority Action / Project - Conservation/ environment.</b>		WASTE WATER TREATMENT WORKS AND WATER WORKS. 6. PROJECT NAME : FACILITATION OF THE UPGRADING OF WATER TREATMENT WORKS AND WATER LICENSE IN DULLSTROOM PHASE 1. Reserve or sustainable supply not indicated.				analyzed weekly to monitor the quality of the effluent. Implementation of a water quality monitoring programme. STLM was ranked second in terms of waste water services in the Green Drop Report. <b>NO RESERVE.</b>		in the IDP, IDP states 'being reviewed'. IDP 2013/14 - indicates WSDP, Investigate waste water recycling. Allocation of 0.5 for recycling and WSDP, but no green drop etc.			
10	1	Environmental sustainability (Score 0 - 1)	NDM Goal 10: Protection and enhancement of environmental assets and natural resources. Mpumalanga PILLAR 5: ENVIRONMENTAL SUSTAINABILITY. Millenium Goals. (National Outcome 10. Protection and enhancement of environmental assets and natural resources)	1	IDP: S2. STATE OF THE PROVINCE ADDRESS: Promoting sustainable environmental management.b. Accelerate access and ensure provision of basic services to communities in a sustainable manner. SDF: National Outcome 10 etc. SDBIP: Key Focus Area Conservation includes nature reserve upgrades.	1	Vision: "A secure environment with sustainable development to promote service excellence, unity and community participation resulting in a caring society". National outcome 10: Protection and enhancement of environmental assets and natural resources - Alignment: ELM has the Environmental Management Framework in place	1	KFA 21: Environmental Management. National Outcome: j) environmental assets and natural resources that are well protected and enhanced. Use of sustainable appears to be linked to services being sustainable, rather than sustainable environmental development despite EMP. KFA 21: Environmental Management	1	Strategic Goal: 6. Integrated environmental, social and economic spatial planning - • Integrated Environmental Management System; • Environmental enhancement; SDF - YET no project indicating IEM. IDP 2014/15: Table 17: Strategic goals and priority areas - Environmental and Solid Waste Management: Waste collection and disposal, Disposal facilities management, Street cleaning, Recycling Initiatives. Environmental Management: Air quality Management, Water pollution, Environmental Education, Mitigation of climate change impacts	1	IDP: Sustainable development in terms of national and provincial programmes. National outcome 10 missing (error). IDP references SDF 2010 - Ensure that all future development is environmentally sustainable and promotes biodiversity conservation. However, environmental management does not appear as a Key Focus Area, although Environmental Analysis includes biodiversity conservation. IDP S1.6. KEY DEVELOPMENT PRIORITIES Issue 10 - Waste and Environmental Management, but environmental management interpreted for waste management. SDF reflects sustainability better.	0.5	IDP: Table 4: Developmental Goals - KPA 1 - Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure: Strategic Objective = Ensure the general environment is protected and promoted in a sustainable way. Programme 10: Environment. SS3.6.5 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) = Sustainable resource management and use (national and provincial). IDP S3.6.13.2 Development Priorities and Strategies - Responsible use and management of the natural resources	1
11	1	Environmental Management as a Key Performance Area (KPA) (Score 0 - 1)	No. Yet distinctly aware of requirement.	0	No.	0	No.	0	IDP: SUB--KPA 5: Safety and Environment - KFA 21: Environmental Management	1	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0

No	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Nkangala DM	Score	Dr JS Moroka LM	Score	Emakhazeni LM	Score	Emalahleni LM	Score	Steve Tshwete LM	Score	Thembisile Hani LM	Score	Victor Khanye (Old=Delmas) LM	Score
12	3	Inclusion of EMF, biosphere reserve (& TFCA for Ba-Phalaborwa LM & Bushbuckridge LM with maximum score of 3) (Score 0-1; 0-2 or 0-3)	Letaba EMF 2009 not indicated however, Nkangala EMF indicated in SDF but not IDP. No biosphere reserve or TFCA.	1	Letaba EMF 2009 not indicated. Nkangala DM EMF not indicated in SDF or IDP, although MBCP 2006 = biodiversity map.	0	Letaba EMF 2009 not indicated. Local EMF 2008. No biosphere reserve or TFCA.	1	Letaba EMF 2009 not indicated. Nkangala DM EMF not indicated in IDP or SDF report. An EMF for the LM is recommended in the SDF. No biosphere reserve or TFCA.	0	Letaba EMF 2009 not indicated. Nkangala DM EMF not indicated in SDF or IDP, although MBCP 2006 = biodiversity map.	0	Letaba EMF 2009 not indicated. NDM EMF not indicated in IDP or SDF. No biosphere reserve or TFCA.	0	NDM EMF not indicated in IDP or SDF. No biosphere reserve or TFCA in LM.	0
13	1	Inclusion of Protected Areas and Conservation areas (at minimum the SDF map should include these areas, while the IDP summary biodiversity map should include these areas). (Score 0-1)	SDF: Protected Areas or Nature Reserves. (PA: Loskop and Skozana). IDP indicates both PA including other NR: Integrated Management Plans (Mdala & Mkhombo Dam Nature Reserves). No map in IDP.	1	SDF: PA of MBCP 2006. IDP: Mdala & Mkhombo Nature Reserves. IDP page 183 indicates Nature Reserves on a map.	1	SDF 2015: Mpumalanga BSP 2014 - PAs. IDP: SDF Map with Nature Reserves, but not all PA as per BSP map included in SDF 2015. In other words, the IDP predates the information update therefore still allocated score of 1.	1	IDP: No. <b>S14.2 ANNEXURE1: SDF - not in the document to assess.</b> IDP: The eMalahleni Nature Reserve and Bankenveld Conservancy are important open spaces situated around the eMalahleni Dam. Porject - Renovate Witbank Nature Reserve. SDF: Not indicated on map. SDF notes eMalahleni Nature Reserve. <b>NO MAPS.</b>	0.5	SDF: Figure 16 = MBCP 2006, but PA not indicated (error). Figure 23 = SDF Map includes Nature Reserves and Conservation Areas but not the 1 PA from MCBP 2006. IDP: Loskop Nature Reserve - project upgrade. BGIS PA different to MCBP PA.	1	IDP: Notes Nature Reserves and connection of these, but no map. SDF: Indicates NR and CA (maps) and S4.6.5 EXISTING NATURE RESERVES, CONSERVANCIES AND BIODIVERSITY.	0.5	No nature reserves or PA in LM.	
14	1	Inclusion of National Protected Areas Expansion Strategy Focus Areas	IDP & SDF: No.	0	IDP & SDF: No.	0	IDP & SDF: No.	0	IDP & SDF: No.	0	IDP & SDF: No.	0	IDP & SDF: No.	0	No NPAES focus areas in LM.	
15	1	Inclusion of spatial biodiversity priority areas - CBA, ESA, NFEPA, systematic biodiversity plans based. (Score 0-1)	SDF: Includes Mpumalanga BCP 2006 as the biodiversity assessment, however, the final SDF map does not maintain the NB areas for protection. IDP does not (acronym BCP indicated).	0.5	SDF: Includes 2006 Mpumalanga BCP. IDP does not.	0.5	SDF 2015: Mpumalanga BSP 2014 included. IDP 2014: No, biodiversity section does not include maps of MBCP 2007 from SDF.	0.5	IDP and SDF: No. SDF mentions MBCP but does not include irreplaceable etc. in Figure 26. Figure 26 = District SDF map.	0	MCBP 2006 in biodiversity map of SDF, but not in IDP.	0.5	SDF: Includes 2006 Mpumalanga BCP. IDP does not.	0.5	SDF: Includes 2006 Mpumalanga BCP. IDP references "important and necessary" biodiversity, but not the C-Plan, two maps of vegetation status (error).	0.5
16	1	Inclusion of land use / development guidelines specific to CBA, ESA, NFEPA, systematic plans (Score 0-1)	SDF: MBCP guidelines Table 7. However, not included in IDP.	0.5	SDF: MBCP guidelines Table 5. However, not included in IDP.	0.5	SDF: Table 6: Biodiversity Guidelines. IDP 2014: No, biodiversity section does not include maps of MBCP 2007 from SDF.	0.5	IDP and SDF: No.	0	SDF: MCBP 2006 land use guidelines in SDF - Table 5 - but not in IDP.	0.5	SDF: S4.6.6. PROVINCIAL ENVIRONMENTAL GUIDELINES - MCBP 2006 land use guidelines in SDF - Table 4 - but not in IDP.	0.5	SDF: S4.6.6. PROVINCIAL ENVIRONMENTAL GUIDELINES - MCBP 2006 land use guidelines in SDF - Table 6 - but not in IDP.	0.5

No	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Nkangala DM	Score	Dr JS Moroka LM	Score	Emakhazeni LM	Score	Emalahleni LM	Score	Steve Tshwete LM	Score	Thembisile Hani LM	Score	Victor Khanye (Old=Delmas) LM	Score
17	2	Inclusion of appropriate natural resource management issues in IDP, LED, SDF; and environmental programmes (Score 0 - 2)	IDP: S4.8.4 Issue 18: Environmental Management - SOER highlights issues - environmental issues or the extent of the pollution (air,water,land), climate change. S4.8.4.3 National Compliance and Enforcement Strategic Project. 4.8.4.5 Strategies (Action Plans). SDF: 4.6.9 DISTRICT WIDE ENVIRONMENTAL CONCERNS. See 5.1.6 KPA 6: Spatial Development Analysis and Rationale: Development Objectives and Strategies - Goal 10: Protection and enhancement of environmental assets and natural resources. However, no dedicated environmental section - some issues under disaster management.	1.5	IDP & SDF: Issues not identified, although sewage plant water pollution indicated under Issue: Sanitation. Mdala-Mkhombo Nature Reserve - Environmental Protection and Infrastructure Programme (funding applied for my MTPA from DEA). <b>NOT ADEQUATE.</b>	0	IDP: S5.1.11. ISSUE 11: ENVIRONMENTAL AND WASTE MANAGEMENT. Wood fuel harvesting, environmental degradation and water quality and availability issues. Air pollution. <b>No sub-section dedicated to environmental issues.</b> Programmes all associated with waste management - rehabilitation of old landfill sites, wastewater effluent monitoring, no funds for air quality. IDP S3.4 Environmental Analysis: "An Environmental Plan for the Protection, Maintenance and Wise Use of Wetlands on the Steenkampsberg Plateau" - destruction of wetlands. Overgrazing, veld fires	1.5	IDP: No. SDF: Issues - Based on NDM SOER (Refer 5.4) and projects /programmes (Refer point 10 above). <b>No sub-section dedicated to environmental issues, but an extract from DM.</b>	1.5	IDP: No sub-section, although water and air pollution indicated in IDP. SDF: S4.6.9 DISTRICT WIDE ENVIRONMENTAL CONCERNS, however these are not specific issues such as deforestation, land degradation, soil erosion etc., but rather general management. Refer projects above. Lack of EMP & specific issues reduces score allocation.	0.5	IDP and SDF: No issues section indicated, although IDP indicates waste water pollution and SDF indicates climate change. <b>NOT ADEQUATE.</b>	0	IDP: Refer 5.4. IDP: Biodiversity section indicates air pollution and green house gases. IDP - Table 39: SWOT Analysis Developments in the wetlands, Illegal sand mining, environmental pollution, Uncleared Dolomite sites (severe injuries), Decreasing water table due to mining activities and farming, Poor management of Mining Exploration/Development and rehabilitation. IDP: Strategic Objective: Ensure the general environment is protected and promoted in a sustainable way: Programme 10: Environment (air quality, water quality, waste management). Refer projects point 10.	1
18	1	Inclusion of ecosystem services (Score 0-1)	Word or concept not included in IDP or SDF. Use of the MBCP 2006 indicates incorporation of ecosystem services.	0.5	Word or concept not included in IDP or SDF. Use of the MBCP 2006 in SDF indicates incorporation of ecosystem services.	0.5	IDP: S5.1.11.1 ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT - It is important to note that communities have to be educated about our dependency on ecosystems and further, that sustainable development needs to be linked to the process of sustaining ecosystem services. SDF includes MBSP 2014.	1	Word or concept not included in IDP or SDF. MCBP not included.	0	The environmental hazards have cautioned the world to recognise the importance of natural ecosystems which are at the core of human survival. MCBP in SDF.	1	Word or concept not included in IDP or SDF. Use of the MBCP 2006 in SDF indicates incorporation of ecosystem services.	0.5	IDP: S1.3.1 Regional Context - Natural resources make a significant and direct contribution to the Nkangala District economy, which is "resource based" (i.e. coal, water, land capacity, geographical features, climate, and conservation areas, and ecosystems, natural features). Use of the MBCP 2006 in SDF indicates incorporation of ecosystem services.	1

No	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Nkangala DM	Score	Dr JS Moroka LM	Score	Emakhazeni LM	Score	Emalahleni LM	Score	Steve Tshwete LM	Score	Thembisile Hani LM	Score	Victor Khanye (Old=Delmas) LM	Score
19.1	1	Key environmental drivers (Score 0-1)	IDP: S4.8.4 Issue 18: Environmental Management: Air pollution, water pollution, climate change. 4.7.6 Issue 11: Emergency Services - Table 31: hazards for each local municipality. SDF 4.6.9 DISTRICT WIDE ENVIRONMENTAL CONCERNS.	1	IDP: No issues sub-section. Only real environmental issue - water pollution from sewage infrastructure. Not adequate.	0	Refer 17 above.	1	Refer 17 above.	1	IDP: No sub-section on environmental issues, although water and air pollution indicated in IDP. SDF: S4.6.9 DISTRICT WIDE ENVIRONMENTAL CONCERNS, however these are not specific issues such as deforestation, land degradation, soil erosion etc., but rather general management. Refer projects above. Lack of EMP & specific issues reduces score allocation.	0.5	IDP: No issues sub-section. Only real environmental issue - water pollution from sewage infrastructure; and climate change.	0	Refer 19. Issues indicated under SWOT analysis rather than environmental section. IDP: Air pollution and green house gases, Developments in the wetlands, Illegal sand mining, environmental pollution, Uncleared Dolomite sites (severe injuries), Decreasing water table due to mining activities and farming, Poor management of Mining Exploration/Development and rehabilitation.	1
19.2	1	Key social drivers (Score 0-1)	IDP: HIV & AIDS, poverty, unemployment, poor transport, food security and affordability, inadequate health services, educational facilities, welfare services, Culture, Sport and Recreation facilities, Safety and Security, drug abuse, teenage pregnancy, Water and sanitation service, electricity and housing backlogs.	1	IDP: SWOT Analysis: Unemployment, poverty, crime, HIV/Aids. Backlogs in water, sanitation, housing, roads, electricity, waste management, inadequate health, recreational and educational facilities.	1	IDP: Inadequate Water and Sanitation, electricity, roads, sports and recreation, health, educational facilities, HIV & AIDS, poverty.	1	IDP: S9.1.2 KEY CHALLENGES: Lack of housing, inadequate sanitation, water supply, community facilities, shortage of burial space, transversal services (for woman, HIV, children), Youth Civic Structures, health care services.	1	IDP: Section MUNICIPAL EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT – THREATS: Negative impact of HIV/AIDS; High levels of crime; High unemployment rate (youth and women unemployment); High poverty rate; High inequalities; Uncontrolled influx onto private land (Informal settlements) requiring basic services; Increasing housing backlog; High population growth. IDP S3. Sanitation: backlog	1	Inadequate / lack of primary and secondary health care facilities, educational skills shortage and literacy, shortage of police stations (safety and security), Lack of access to sporting facilities, inadequate public transport and poor roads, Major water supply shortages, lack of/inadequate sanitation services, electrification backlogs, HIV & Aids, high levels of unemployment and illiteracy, poverty.	1	High unemployment rate (poverty), backlogs in water, sanitation, housing; access to education, transport/roads maintenance, lack of adequate Sporting and recreational facilities, libraries, crime drug abuse, teenage pregnancy, inadequate waste management.	1
20	1	EIA and other regulations (Score 0-1)	Training officials within the NDM as Environmental Management Inspectors' (EMIs) programme by DEDET - for compliance.	0.5	SDF indicates EIA for particular items, not a section on legislation.	0	Project: GREENFIELD DEVELOPMENT IN GUGULETHU - Indicator - EIA studies completed. ROD issued. Score 0.5 allocated for awareness but no section on legislation. EIAs indicated for other infrastructure.	0.5	IDP: No. SDF: Inadequate (one mention).	0	IDP S8. Environmental Management - EIA requirements. Green Drop and NWA indicated.	1	IDP: No. SDF: Noted briefly. LUM: comply with the provisions of the National Environmental Management Act 1988, the Environmental Conservation Act 1989 and the EIA Regulations (Implementation of Sections 21, 22 and 26 of the	0.5	IDP: No. SDF: Indicates poor compliance with NEMA EIA. No dedication section under environmental analysis.	0.5

No	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Nkangala DM	Score	Dr JS Moroka LM	Score	Emakhazeni LM	Score	Emalahleni LM	Score	Steve Tshwete LM	Score	Thembisile Hani LM	Score	Victor Khanye (Old=Delmas) LM	Score
21	2	Manage disaster risk (Score 0-2) For a Score 2 to be allocated there should be strategic identification of flood prone areas in SDF (on a map), as a minimum.	IDP: Table 39: Status of compliance with Disaster Management Act - The NDM has a Disaster Management Framework and a Disaster Management Plan but not a Disaster Management Centre yet. SDF does not indicate zones, but acknowledges flooding.	1.5	IDP: Disaster Management Plan - under review. IDP & SDF do not mention floods.	1	IDP S7.6. Disaster Management Plan (DMP). IDP & SDF do not mention flood risks.	1	IDP: S8.3 DISASTER MANAGEMENT (2012) - Review disaster management plan. Flooding is one hazard. SDF: Vulnerability: The main issues identified are housing located in the flood lines, sinkholes and on steep slopes. LUM Scheme indicates dolomite areas and floodprone areas on map.	1.5	IDP: b. Fire and Emergency - The Level 1 Disaster Management Plan and the Contingency Plan are active and revised annually including an updated resource list. IDP Project: Ensure contribute to climate change - Floodline master plan. IDP S13.3. Disaster Risk Reduction - Floods. SDF: No mention of flood prone areas.	1.5	Environmental Conservation Act)	1	IDP: S4.9 Disaster Management Plan - SO3/02/2012. Programme 7: Disaster Management. Inadequate storm water drainage systems and as a result houses are flooded during raining seasons.	1
22	3	Extent of integration / cross-referencing (Score 0 -3)	Moderate. IDP has not referenced SDF adequately though. IDP is outdated (no 2014-2015 IDP on website).	2	SDF references IDP, but IDP not an adequate reflection of detailed SDF. LED references IDP priorities, has an environmental section. LED references SDF 2007.	2	SDF references IDP, but IDP (2014) not an adequate reflection of detailed SDF (2014).	2	IDP has SDF as annexure and S7.2 SPATIAL AND DEVELOPMENT PLANNING. SDF has minor referencing, but not indicating issues, priorities etc.	1	IDP does not adequately reflect environmental data (no maps), although section on SDF. SDF references IDP. LED references IDP but not SDF.	1.5	IDP: References Thembisile Hani Spatial Development Framework (2010) - might pre-date SDF 2014. No environmental issues from SDF indicated. IDP S5.2. LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT. S4.1. SPATIAL RATIONALE - SDF 2010. SDF S3.1 IDP RELATED PRIORITY ISSUES.	2	IDP references SDF 2010 (probably predates SDF 2014). SDF references IDP. IDP contains maps.	2
23	2	Alignment of overlapping municipalities - Environmental issues and management (Score 0 -2)	IDP: Table 31: hazards for each local municipality (includes deforestation, degradation, pollution). SDF indicates district wide issues - related more to environmental management.	1.5	The LM does not indicate issues. DM does.	1	DM IDP aligns issues. Wood fuel harvesting not indicated (part of degradation?)	1.5	Issues taken from DM SOER, however, not identifying the LM issues is not proper alignment.	1	IDP does not contain sub-section on local issues so how can alignment be adequate. SDF: District wide environmental concerns. NDM CC Strategy and EMF not mentioned.	1	The LM does not indicate issues. DM does. Management programmes of NDM not in the LM document.	1	IDP does include local issues, although not in environmental section. SDF: District wide environmental concerns related to environmental management. NDM CC Strategy and EMF not mentioned.	1

No	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Nkangala DM	Score	Dr JS Moroka LM	Score	Emakhazeni LM	Score	Emalahleni LM	Score	Steve Tshwete LM	Score	Thembisile Hani LM	Score	Victor Khanye (Old=Delmas) LM	Score
24	1	Monitoring & evaluation (Score 0-1)	IDP: 8.3 Performance monitoring & Evaluation. Performance Management System and SDIP. SDF: 6.2 IMPLEMENTATION MONITORING AND EVALUATION GUIDELINES. IDP Governance and Administration - page 325 indicates: More focus on Implementation and Monitoring	0.5	IDP: Page 20: PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM. IDP states: Land Use Management Schemes, Town planning schemes, rezoning and the Spatial Development Framework which has to be reviewed annually. SDF: an assessment/ audit should be done by November of each year to determine to what degree the goals and objectives of the SDF have been achieved during the preceding year.	1	IDP: The ELM adopted the municipal balanced score card during March 2006, as its performance management system. SDF: S6.2 IMPLEMENTATION AND MONITORING	1	IDP: S10.2 PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT. IDP PROJECTS: Review of IDP, disaster management plan, EMP. SDF: It is appropriate that, as part of the annual IDP Review Process, an assessment/ audit should be done by November of each year to determine to what degree the goals and objectives of the SDF have been achieved during the preceding year.	0.5	IDP: 4.5. Performance Management System (PMS) and Integrated Development Plan. Sector Plan = Performance Management System. Performance Management System limited to higher positions. SDF: 6.2 INSTITUTIONAL ARRANGEMENTS FOR IMPLEMENTATION - should be an annual review of SDF with the IDP	1	IDP S5.4.5. Performance Management. SDF: Monitoring and Evaluation of the implementation of the SDF proposals - annual with IDP review. IDP: Project 5.3 : Oversight role for Monitoring and Evaluation. Reviewed and adopted 2015/2016 IDP by 31 May 2015. Monitoring disaster management.	1	IDP: S2.2.18 Performance Management. SDF: an assessment/ audit should be done by November of each year to determine to what degree the goals and objectives of the SDF have been achieved during the preceding year.	1
25	1	Evidence of financial capacity (Score 0-1)	IDP: RSC levies would be abolished as of 1 July 2006 - unfunded mandates such as Environmental Services. IDP environmental projects are funded.	0.5	IDP projects funded but very limited.	0.5	IDP projects funded but very limited, unfunded projects indicated. Projects largely related to waste / effluent management.	0.5	IDP projects funded and unfunded projects indicated. Projects largely related to waste and rehabilitation of sites / effluent management.	0.5	IDP Projects are funded. Good projects and programmes, although lacks EMP etc.	1	IDP projects funded but environmental projects inadequate. Refer institutional issues - financial issues.	0.5	IDP Projects are funded. Although biodiversity specific planning tools are lacking.	0.5
26	1	Evidence of environmental staff capacity (Score 0-1). Dedicated unit allocate score of 1.	IDP: RSC levies would be abolished as of 1 July 2006 - unfunded mandates such as Environmental Services. SDF: Lack of human and budgetary capacity, awareness on available biodiversity resources, and a significantly under-represented protected area network is hampering the District's ability to effectively manage biodiversity in the area. <b>Training officials within the NDM as Environmental Management Inspectors' (EMIs) programme by DEDET.</b>	0.5	IDP: Organogram - COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT SERVICES (WASTE & ENVIRONMENT MANAGEMENT) - environmental management associated with waste management.	0	Annual Report: Emakhazeni Local municipality does not have a dedicated Environmental Management Section within the municipality or any appointed Environmental Management Officers. IDP: 5.11 Issue 11: Environmental and Waste Management - need environmental management to deal with issues of climate change, biodiversity, EIA applications, waste management issues etc.	0	IDP: 8.2 ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT - Environmental management compliance can only be achieved by establishment of an Environmental management compliance unit which is currently non-existent. Detailed organogram not indicated in IDP.	0	IDP: Training Report 2012/2013: Environmental Management System Training; establishing an environmental management forum. However, no dedicated staff or unit.	0.5	No	0	IDP: Programme 10: Environment - VKLM has appointed two (2) environmental Health Practitioners who are responsible for overseeing waste disposal and containment. Annual Report: 3.16 BIODIVERSITY - The municipality has currently no capacity to implement a Bio-Diversity programme. IDP - to appoint a qualified person to assume this role and establish sound working relationships with the local mining fraternity.	0

No	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Nkangala DM	Score	Dr JS Moroka LM	Score	Emakhazeni LM	Score	Emalaheni LM	Score	Steve Tshwete LM	Score	Thembisile Hani LM	Score	Victor Khanye (Old=Delmas) LM	Score
27	1	Key institutional issues (Score 0-1). A score of 1 is allocated if institutional issues recognize environmental element/climate change.	IDP Governance and Administration - page 325. AND S2.7: Uncoordinated development implementation, lack of skills and knowledge, 4.3. KPA 1: INSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT & MUNICIPAL TRANSFORMATION: Unfunded mandates such as Environmental Services. Emanating from this exercise key issues relevant to the NDM that were identified are: n Basic Service Delivery; n Public participation; n Political management and oversight; n Administration; n Labour relations; n Financial Management; n Local Economic Development. Under climate change: • Build of institutional capacity building for environmental management and AEL function;	1	IDP: MUNICIPAL SWOT ANALYSIS: Institutional: Lack of strong financial base for revenue collection; Insufficient funds for maintenance of Infrastructure; Office space; Time management ( on matters of IDP review); High staff turnover. Other sections in IDP state shortage of staff.	0.5	IDP: KPA 4: INSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT AND TRANSFORMATION - INSTITUTIONAL ANALYSIS: Weaknesses: - Inability to recruit or retain scarce skills; - Inadequate implementation of financial policies; - Lowly funded skills development program; - Ineffective performance management system; - High vacancies and insufficient income to fill posts. Point 28 - Awareness of need for environmental management, yet organogram does not indicate Environmental Manager for management of biodiversity rather than environmental health.	1	IDP S12.5 IDP PRIORITIES - huge challenges regarding governance, institution and financial capacity and this has impacted severely on service delivery and sustainability. A culture of non-compliance and entitlement culture has developed amongst staff, Dysfunctional service delivery and a lack of equipment and tools; Continued dysfunctional operations and non-compliance leading to successive disclaimer audit findings. Point 28 - Awareness of need for environmental management, no detailed organogram.	1	IDP: KEY INSTITUTIONAL CHALLENGES • Air pollution; • Inadequate funding for housing supply; • Inadequate transport infrastructure; • Insufficient funding for infrastructure upgrading; • Provision of sufficient serviced stands; • Apathy of communities in municipal matters; • Obtain and retain skilled staff (results in shortage of skilled staff); • Insufficient communication within and marketing of the municipality. WEAKNESSES: Loss of qualified staff (job hopping); Lack of office space in Civic Centre; Lines of communication not always followed. Allocated score 1 for training above.	1	IDP S1.4. SWOT ANALYSIS: Inadequate Financial Management; • Political interference in administration; • Poor revenue collection; • Low skills base; • No property rates collection; • Non-compliance to approved policies; • Lack of proper financial planning; • Poor enforcement of the Land Use Management Systems; • Insufficient working tools (Vehicles); • Shortage of staff to manage waste and facilities	0.5	IDP: Section SWOT Analysis: Lack of suitable or adequate office accommodation, Document / Records management, Low municipal staff morale, Poor municipal by-laws enforcement, Congested “schedule of events”, Unfilled budgeted posts, Poor internal and external communications channels, IDP not fully implementable, Lack of skills in low level employees, Supply Chain Management processes to restrictive for normal operations, Financial constraints. The lack of the Annual Report statement above in the IDP does not permit allocated score of 1.	0.5
28	1	Adequate stakeholder engagement (DEDET, SANParks, Working for Water) (Score 0-1)	IDP: 2.6.7. NDM 2013 IDP INDABA. EPWP indicated, no DEDET projects, but DEDET programmes included. IDP Technical committee: includes LM and sector departments. IDP and LED Working Committees - Focus on Key Focus Areas (includes sector departments).	0.5	IDP Swot Analysis: Lack of relationship with some sector Departments. Sector projects identified. SDF states traditional authorities must participate (page 91).	0.5	IDP TECHNICAL COMMITTEE: LM struggling to attract the representatives from the departments of Public Works, Water Affairs and Department of Human Settlement, and Forestry amongst others, to form part of this committee.	0.5	IDP Representative Forum - Senior officials from government; 3.3.1 NATIONAL INTERGOVERNMENTAL STRUCTURES; 3.3.2 PROVINCIAL INTERGOVERNMENTAL STRUCTURE. S13 - 2014/15 EXTERNALLY FUNDED PROJECTS. Other projects also funded by government e.g. DWA, EPWP. No DEDET environmental programmes?	0.5	MEC Comments on 2012/13 IDP - Limited of Intergovernmental Relations (IGR) The municipality only involving mines in their planning and leaving out other sector departments. LM Response in 2014/15 IDP - stakeholders meeting (private sector, mines, sector departments, NGOs, etc) - presented community priorities and requested all stakeholders to assist in implementing their mandate. Further a technical representative forum	1	Based on sector projects, appears to be good. IDP S5.3.3.1. Communication and Public Participation Strategy - Engaging sector departments and utilities in the various processes and forums for Integrated Development Planning (IDP). However, DEDET or environmental projects not indicated.	1	IDP S1.3.4 Intergovernmental Forums - Ensure that all key sectoral issues are well reflected in the IDP; Ensure that all projects and programmes of all key stakeholders are well captured within the IDP. IDP: Section SWOT Analysis: Functional intergovernmental Forum. EPWP and DEDET etc. indicated.	1

No	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Nkangala DM	Score	Dr JS Moroka LM	Score	Emakhazeni LM	Score	Emalahleni LM	Score	Steve Tshwete LM	Score	Thembisile Hani LM	Score	Victor Khanye (Old=Delmas) LM	Score
											was held where sector departments presented their projects for STLM.					
29		Biodiversity specific documents														
29.1	1	Municipal BSP / Cons Plan (Score 0-1). Provide references to provincial biodiversity plans & incorporation into final desired spatial outcome	Provincial Mpumalanga BCP 2006 included in SDF.	0	Provincial Mpumalanga BCP 2006 included in SDF. However, final SDF map indicates crop farming and towns in highly significant, important and necessary areas.	0	MBCP 2006 in SDF 2014 and Mpumalanga BSP in SDF January 2015.	0	SDF states: Protect the protected, irreplaceable, highly significant, important and necessary areas against mining, agriculture and forestry. (Mpumalanga Biodiversity Plan). SDF is based on NDM, but MBCP 2006 biodiversity map is not in document and final SDF does not include irreplaceable sites as conservation.	0	Provincial Mpumalanga 2006 included in SDF.	0	Provincial Mpumalanga BCP 2006 included in SDF. Ecological Corridor included in final SDF MAP, however does not appear to have included irreplaceable, important sites as conservation areas, rather extensive agriculture (permitted in NB areas) and another colour unable to interpret on map.	0	Provincial Mpumalanga BCP 2006 included in SDF. Final SDF figure 34 - mining areas in irreplaceable sites.	0
29.2	1	EMF (Score 0-1)	SDF: NDM EMF (2010). (Emakhazeni EMF: Terrestrial Ecology Status Quo Report, 2007)	1	No. SDF and IDP: District EMF not indicated.	0	Local EMF 2008. References The Mpumalanga Conservation Plan.	1	No. SDF and IDP: District EMF not indicated.	0	No. SDF and IDP: District EMF not indicated.	0	No. SDF and IDP: District EMF not indicated.	0	No. SDF and IDP: District EMF not indicated.	0
29.3	1	EMP (Score 0-1)	IDP sector plan: Environmental Management Plan 2011	1	IDP: No. District EMP not indicated.	0	EMF Volume III : Strategic Environmental Management Plan, including an Implementation Plan.	1	IDP: EMP 2008/9	1	IDP: No. District EMP not indicated for usage. SDF references it.	0	IDP: No. District EMP not indicated.	0	IDP: States no EMP but then in Sector Plans listing. District EMP not indicated.	0
29.4	1	SoER (Score 0-1)	NKANGALA DISTRICT - STATE OF THE ENVIRONMENT REPORT 2006	1	IDP: No.	0	IDP: No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	IDP: No.	0	IDP: No.	0
29.5	1	SEA (Score 0-1)	No stand-alone SEA. SDF: (f) to contain a strategic assessment of the environmental impact of the spatial development framework	0	No stand-alone SEA. SDF: (f) to contain a strategic assessment of the environmental impact of the spatial development framework & Section 1 - Contain a strategic environmental assessment	0	No stand-alone SEA. SDF: Section 1 - Contain a strategic environmental assessment	0	No.	0	No.	0	No stand-alone SEA. SDF: (f) to contain a strategic assessment of the environmental impact of the spatial development framework & Section 1 - Contain a strategic environmental assessment	0	No stand-alone SEA.	0
29.6	1	Plans/budget to implement above biodiversity specific tools or update if existing (Score 0-1)	No SEA.	0	No SEA.	0	No SEA.	0	SDF Recommendation: Strategic Projects and Actions 1. Environmental Management Frameworks for	0.5	No.	0	No.	0	VKLM does not presently have an Environmental Management Plan which is crucial to maintaining and protecting of the Environment, but this will be	1

No	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Nkangala DM	Score	Dr JS Moroka LM	Score	Emakhazeni LM	Score	Emalahleni LM	Score	Steve Tshwete LM	Score	Thembisile Hani LM	Score	Victor Khanye (Old=Delmas) LM	Score
									Emalahleni. Not indicated in IDP.						addressed in the forthcoming year.	
30.1	1	BSP / Cons Plan - current	IDP: No indication of MBSP 2014.	0	IDP: No indication of MBSP 2014.	0	SDF 2015 contains MBSP 2014.	0	No.	0	No.	0	IDP: No indication of MBSP 2014.	0	No.	0
30.2	1	EMF - current	SDF: NDM EMF (2010).	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0
30.3	1	EMP - current	Environmental Management Plan 2011	0	No.	0	No.	0	IDP: EMP 2008/9	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0
30.4	1	SoER - current	NKANGALA DISTRICT - STATE OF THE ENVIRONMENT REPORT 2006	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0
30.5	1	SEA - current	No SEA.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0
31	1	Other environmental management tools other than those indicated above	IDP: § Environmental Strategy § Environmental Management Policy in 2008. Atmospheric Emission Licensing (AEL) Section 78 Assessment Report & Implementation Plan in May 2012	1	SDF: d) Environment (Support environmental management, tourism and recreational activities) - open space system recommended.	0	IDP: "An Environmental Plan for the Protection, Maintenance and Wise Use of Wetlands on the Steenkampsberg Plateau"	1	No. Plan to develop a local Air Quality Management Plan	0.5	IDP: Environmental management policy and establishing an environmental management forum.	0.5	No.	0	No.	0
		<b>GENERAL COMMENTS:</b>	IDP Working Group: Health, Environment and Social Development. Climate change in IDP, SDF & AR but no flood prone areas included. IDP is outdated. Integration into IDP needs improvement.		Environmental management associated with waste management. SDF consultant for DM & LM the same. IDP environmental content is poor. CRDP focus areas in SDF Map 26. Other SDF maps, map clinics, schools etc.		Environmental Conservation - zone. A major challenge - Environmental Management is usually confused to be Environmental Health (Municipal Health) - leads to the Environmental Health section dealing with Environmental management. Despite ESA: Strategic Water Source Areas, guidelines need to be clearly indicated. Integration into IDP needs improvement.		Guidelines in objective 4 relating to economic development include protecting wetlands, rivers etc. should be in strategic objective 3, although admittedly wetlands and rivers occur outside of conservation areas indicated in Figure 26? References MBCP but the map does not reflect the plan.		Mining and agriculture in the MCBP 2006 important areas. Strategic Goal: 6. Integrated environmental, social and economic spatial planning - • Integrated Environmental Management System; • Environmental enhancement; SDF - YET no project indicating IEMS. Some good projects/programmes though.		SDF consultant for DM & LM the same. CRDP wards. Waste and Environmental Management - focus on waste disposal.		Threatened habitats confusion, although IDP emphasises importance of conserving, and need for capacity relating to mining. Annual report recognizes capacity constraints. MCBP in SDF but not IDP.	
<b>Max Score</b>	<b>62</b>	<b>Total Score</b>	Maximum Score 59	<b>35</b>	Maximum Score 59	<b>23.5</b>	Maximum Score 61	<b>35</b>	Maximum Score 59	<b>26</b>	Maximum Score 61	<b>31</b>	Maximum Score 59	<b>23</b>	Maximum Score 57	<b>27.5</b>
<b>minus LUMS</b>	<b>61</b>		Excludes criterion 5 LUMS		Excludes criterion 5 LUMS		Includes criterion 5 LUMS		Excludes criterion 5 LUMS		Includes criterion 5 LUMS		Excludes criterion 5 LUMS			
<b>minus TFCA</b>	<b>60</b>	<b>Percentage</b>	No TFCA	<b>59.3</b>	No TFCA	<b>39.8</b>	No TFCA	<b>57.4</b>	No TFCA	<b>44.1</b>	No TFCA	<b>50.82</b>	No TFCA	<b>39.0</b>	No TFCA	<b>48.2</b>
<b>minus BR</b>	<b>58</b>	<b>Category</b>	No BR	<b>D</b>	No BR	<b>E</b>	No BR	<b>D</b>	No BR	<b>E</b>	No BR	<b>D</b>	No BR	<b>E</b>	No BR	<b>D</b>
<b>minus NPAES</b>	<b>57</b>	<b>Category Definition</b>	NPAES in DM.	<b>FAIR</b>	NPAES in LM.	<b>POOR</b>	NPAES in LM.	<b>FAIR</b>	Only very small portion of NPAES in LM.	<b>POOR</b>	NPAES in LM.	<b>FAIR</b>	NPAES in LM.	<b>POOR</b>	No NPAES AND PA or CA (nature reserves) in LM.	<b>FAIR</b>

**Table 17.** Mpumalanga Province: Gert Sibande and Ehlanzeni Districts - Allocated scores for each criterion per municipality with a brief summary motivation indicating level of social-ecological content.

No	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Gert Sibande DM	Score	Govan Mbeki LM	Score	Musukaligwa LM	Score	Ehlanzeni DM	Score	Bushbuckridge LM	Score	Thaba Chweu LM	Score
1.1	1	IDP (Score 0-1)	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1
1.2	1	LEDs (Score 0-1)	Y (Indicated in IDP)	1	Y	1	Y (Indicated in IDP)	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y (Indicated in IDP)	1
1.3	1	SDF (Score 0-1)	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y (Indicated in IDP)	1	Y	1	Y	1
1.4	1	LUM Scheme (Score 0-1)	Y. (Indicated in IDP states: Key issues pertaining to Land Use and Spatial Structure - Fragmented Town Planning Schemes which exclude rural and farm areas; Addressing the problems related to using obsolete Town Planning Schemes; Lack of exclusive authority to create Townships and amend Municipal planning schemes).	0.5	Y	1	Y. (Indicated in SDF. However, the SDF states - there are a number of town planning schemes and other pieces of legislation which govern land use within different parts of Musukaligwa, and the area is in need of a single Land Use Scheme). Does not indicate fragmented or excluded areas so allocated score of 1.	1	N. IDP - non-availability of Land Use Management Schemes.	0	No. EDM IDP - non-availability of Land Use Management Schemes. SDF appears to confirm no LUM available. IDP: Land Use Management Systems adopted in 2009 (System is not Scheme).	0	No. EDM IDP - non-availability of Land Use Management Schemes. IDP: The Three Town Planning Schemes are outdated (i.e they do not address the current spatial challenges) and thus need to be replaced by Land-Use Management Scheme - absence of a single inclusive spatial policy.	0
1.5	1	Annual Report	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1	Y	1
1.6		Documents not sourced	LED; LUMS		Not applicable.		LED; LUMS		SDF		Not applicable.		LED	
2.1	1	IDP up to date	Y. Draft 2014-2015 (DV downloaded).	1	Yes. Draft 2015/2016	1	Yes. IDP 2014 - 2015	1	Yes. 2014/15	1	No. 2013/14. No updated IDP on website.	0	No. 2013/2014 (could not access website).	0
2.2	1	LEDs up to date	Unknown. Date not indicated in IDP.	0	No. LED 2009	0	No. IDP states dated 2010.	0	LED Strategy 2009 reviewed 2013. Sourced LED is dated 2009.	0	LED 2011 - 2014	0	IDP: S5.5.1. Local Economic Development (LED), Tourism and Trade - no date indicated.	0
2.3	1	SDF up to date	No. 2009. IDP 2013/14 states: The SDF is also going to be reviewed this financial year. Annual Report lists SDF 2014, but IDP 2014-2015 lists SDF 2009.	0	No. SDF 2006. Yet IDP indicates SDF 2014.	1	Yes. 2010.	1	SDF 2010. IDP does not indicate review of SDF for 2015.	1	Y. SDF November 2010. (DV downloaded from website)	1	Y. 2014	1
2.4	1	LUM up to date	Date unknown	0	No. LUM 2010	0	No. See above.	0	No LUM Scheme.	0	No LUM Scheme, but - Bushbuckridge Land Use Management By-law, 2014 - Township establishment - requires EMP approved by DEDET.	0	No LUMS has been developed.	0
2.5	1	Annual Report up to date	No. Draft 2013/2014	0	No. 2013 - 2014	0	No. 2012 - 2013	0	No. 2012 - 2013.	0	No. 2011/2012.	0	No. 2012 - 2013.	0
3.1	1	Summary biodiversity section or environmental analysis (Score 0-1). Score of 1 if IDP & SDF contain section.	IDP: No environmental section. (Very Poor) SDF: S3.4 NATURAL ENVIRONMENT. IDP 2012 - 2017: 15 ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT AND PROTECTION	0.5	IDP: S6.4 ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT - no environmental data/analysis (Poor) SDF: S2.12 Environment and Tourism	0.5	IDP: 1.9 LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT AND ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT OVERVIEW. Focus on management not environmental analysis (Poor). Map 6: Conservation of ecological areas. SDF: 2.11 Environmental Scan (with maps).	0.5	IDP S5.1.2. PROTECTED AND SENSITIVE AREAS; S5.1.4. NATURAL ECOLOGY - Water Resources. Biomes and Acocks Veld Type etc. (Fair, despite not most up to date data). Some maps derived from SDF therefore presumably in SDF.	1	IDP S5.1.9. Environmental Management - however no information on the environment e.g. vegetation, rivers etc. (Poor). SDF: 3.4 ENVIRONMENTAL FEATURES	0.5	IDP: S2.3.1.9. Nature Reserve and Environmental Sensitive Areas. S2.3.1. Spatial Analysis also includes topography, geology, water resources (includes groundwater), climate, dolomite areas. (Poor). SDF: S4.2 Bio-Physical/Natural Environment	1

No	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Gert Sibande DM	Score	Govan Mbeki LM	Score	Msukaligwa LM	Score	Ehlanzeni DM	Score	Bushbuckridge LM	Score	Thaba Chweu LM	Score
3.2	1	Does the SDF (& IDP) contain land use/development guidelines e.g. avoid wetlands or sensitive areas. (Score 0-1). Score of 1 if IDP & SDF contain section.	IDP: No. SDF: MBCP 2006 Table 2: Land Use Suitability per Biodiversity Category	0.5	IDP and SDF: No. General development/biodiversity guidelines, to for example	0	IDP and SDF: No.	0	IDP: No.	0	SDF: S3.4.6 Integrated Environmental Implementation Plan (IEIP), 2008 - 'highly significant' biodiversity (see Figure 17a). Also, drainage lines and wetland areas are highly sensitive and must be protected. Kruger to Canyons Biosphere - Table 7: Development Guidelines for Core Areas. Figure 17a: Environmental Biodiversity Assessment. Reference of 'highly significant' biodiversity - from MBCP 2006 but no reference to MBCP 2006? No Maps available in document.	0.5	IDP: No. SDF: No. Spatial guidelines for certain areas, but not in terms of a sub-section for features. Note the IDP 2013-14 pre dates SDF 2014.	0
3.3	1	Cross referencing to environmental analysis/environmental concerns/biodiversity data & land use guidelines (Score 0-1)	IDP references SDF - S3.6.1 District Land Use And Spatial Development. IDP - S3.3. KPA 3: LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT. 3.3 6. COMPREHENSIVE RURAL DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME. SDF references IDP - S3.1.10 GERT SIBANDE INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN (IDP) PRIORITY ISSUES.	1	IDP references SDF (6.2 SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT), LED (6.8 LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT), CRDP. LED references SDF: S3.2. Spatial Development Framework, IDP throughout. SDF references IDP (also maps e.g. health facilities) and LED (focus areas on map).	1	IDP: References SDF in roads, sanitation, water etc. SDF, EMP and LED sections in IDP. SDF references IDP and presumably received info from IDP, LED is referenced and S4.2.8 FOCUS AREAS FOR RURAL LAND REFORM AND LED.	1	IDP references SDF, LED, LUM. No SDF to assess, therefore scored according to IDP only. LED references SDF and IDP.	1	EDM IDP: The Bushbuckridge Local Municipality has been declared as an ISRDP (Integrated Sustainable Rural Development Programme) Node. IDP references SDF and LED, lists Local Economic Development projects. SDF references IDP and LED, with Table 16: Current LED Projects in Bushbuckridge LM (2010) (good). LED references IDP and SDF. SDF - Figure 6: ISRDS Rural Development Nodes	2	Note the IDP 2013-14 pre dates SDF 2014. IDP references SDF - S5.3. Spatial Development Framework (SDF) but no detailed reflection of its contents e.g. maps (even if pre-dated version). IDP references LED. SDF references IDP 2013/14 and LED (including Comprehensive Rural Development Programme, 20094), however no listing of LED Projects.	1
3.4	1	Includes environmental priorities (e.g. CBA, ecologically sensitive areas) & risks (Score 0-1). If in both IDP and SDF, Score = 1	IDP: No. SDF: MBCP 2006 S3.4 NATURAL ENVIRONMENT. Wetlands inclusion good. However, lacking integration into IDP. Risks - not in IDP. SDF: S3.4.6 SOER: District Wide Environmental Concerns	0.5	SDF: Map 28: Environmental Sensitivity - includes MBCP 2006. The primary open space network will function on a municipal scale and will also link up with the overall Mpumalanga open space network. Maps not in IDP. Risks - SDF: S2.12.4 VEGETATION AND BIODIVERSITY - Urbanization; Other threats that are not less important are afforestation, loss of riverine and wetland/marsh habitat, agriculture and livestock modification, invasive alien plants and trees, food scarcity for fauna as a result of habitat loss (also results in loss of biodiversity), poisoning, disturbance through human activities (and domestic dogs and cats) such as hunting and off-road vehicles etc, and human-made structures such as high-tension cables. S2.12.6 POLLUTION.	0.5	IDP: Map 6: Conservation of ecological areas. SDF: Reference to Mpumalanga BCP 2006 - but the Biodiversity Map 32 does not reflect BCP categories. S3.4.5 PROMOTE THE ESTABLISHMENT OF MUNICIPAL-WIDE, LINKED ECOLOGICAL CORRIDORS & S4.2.10 THE REGIONAL OPEN SPACE SYSTEM. S2.11.4 VEGETATION AND BIODIVERSITY - includes threats to biodiversity and S 2.11.6 POLLUTION.	0.5	IDP: Yes. Figure 37: Protected and Sensitive areas. No SDF to assess, therefore scored according to IDP only. LED S3.5. ENVIRONMENTAL- AND TOURISM SECTORS - but does not include sensitive areas.	1	RISKS: IDP - The biggest threat to natural resources is rural sprawl and illegal sand mining which threaten mainly sensitive environments such as rivers, wetlands, ridges and rare vegetation. LED lists provincial SOER issues. SDF: Figure 17a: Environmental Biodiversity Assessment; Figure 17b: Zonation Map (Biosphere Zones). IDP does not indicate areas, although LED component notes Kruger to Canyon for tourism development.	0.5	IDP: S2.3.1.9. Nature Reserve and Environmental Sensitive Areas.(Note that data quality not adequate). SDF: Yes, the Mpumalanga Biodiversity Sector Plan - Map 7a and NEMBA Threatened Ecosystems. The Regional Open Space System: The proposed open space system is predicated on the major watercourses and other natural features and includes nature reserves within the TCLM. The Blyde River Gorge on the eastern boundary requires the provision of environmental interfaces to ensure the protection of their resources. RISKS - IDP: indicates air and waste pollution in Waste Management Section. SDF: No.	0.5
4	1	Summary biodiversity maps (Score 0 -1). If maps are in IDP & SDF, Score = 1.	IDP: No. SDF: MBCP 2006 S3.4 NATURAL ENVIRONMENT. Figure 12a: Mpumalanga Biodiversity Conservation Plan.	0.5	SDF: Map 28: Environmental Sensitivity, including others. IDP: No.	0.5	IDP: Map 6: Conservation of ecological areas. SDF: Yes. Reference to Mpumalanga BCP 2006 - but the Biodiversity Map 32 does not reflect BCP categories. IDP: S5.2.1 - Map 6: Conservation and Ecological Corridors,	0.75	IDP: Figure 37: Protected and Sensitive areas. LED does not include biodiversity map. No SDF to assess, therefore scored according to IDP only.	1	SDF: Figure 17a: Environmental Biodiversity Assessment; Figure 17b: Zonation Map (Biosphere Zones). LED indicates important areas for tourism development - conservation worthy areas (but no maps). IDP: No maps.	0.5	IDP: Map: 07. Environmental Sensitive Areas. SDF: Mpumalanga Biodiversity Sector Plan - Map 7a and NEMBA Threatened Ecosystems. SDF indicates a conservation zone (= ecological corridor).	1

No	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Gert Sibande DM	Score	Govan Mbeki LM	Score	Msukaligwa LM	Score	Ehlanzeni DM	Score	Bushbuckridge LM	Score	Thaba Chweu LM	Score
							which is Map 24 of the SDF. Should be Map 32 as well.							
5	1	Does the LUM Scheme include a conservation zone or at minimum consider environmental protection (Score 0-1)	No LUMS sourced to assess.	0	Yes. Land Use Zone - Environmental Conservation.	1	No wall to wall LUMS developed to assess. Town Planning Schemes not sourced to assess.		No LUM Scheme exists (IDP reference).	0	LUMS is not developed.	0	LUMS is not developed. Note that the SDF indicates a conservation zone (= ecological corridor).	0
6	2	Climate change & mitigation measures (Score 0-2). The Score of 2 only attained if proper spatial guidelines indicated in SDF (& IDP) e.g. floodlines, buffers, high water yielding areas.	IDP: No section on climate change, but in document - Development Principle 1: 1.11. Promotion and support of climate change and greenhouse gases reduction programs and projects; [Air quality management / job creation]. 1.2.Promotion and support of air quality management plans programs and projects to reduce air pollution; [Air quality management]. 1.10. Promotion and support of renewable energy programs and projects;[Air quality management]. 1.11. Promotion and support of climate change and greenhouse gases reduction programs and projects; [Air quality management / job creation]. Table 33.: Water Quality Challenges and Recommended Strategic Actions - Climate Change adaptation. Air Quality Management Plan. IDP: Promote the Expansion of the Greening Economy in the District - alternative energy. AQMP in process of development. IDP: Some houses have solar panels installed.	1.5	IDP: Climate change, Air pollution, Droughts noted as threats, but no dedicated section. IDP: National programme - TRANSITION TO A LOW-CARBON ECONOMY § Speed up and expand renewable energy and waste recycling, and ensure buildings meet energy-efficient standards - translated to Key Priority Area 4: Sustainable Environmental Development Strategic Thrust: § To ensure sustainable development and environmental management. LED projects - Renewable energy projects (solar / wind / waste). · Economic Sector focused projects - Renewable energy projects. KPA 2: PHYSICAL INFRASTRUCTURE AND ENERGY EFFICIENCY. IDP: Various initiatives has been put in place through which electricity consumption should be managed such as energy saving and the implementation of automated meter readings. LED and SDF do not mention climate change. SDF: Many of these settlements are situated in low-lying areas within the 1:100 year floodplains; LUMS to consider 1:100 year. LED project proposed: Renewable energy projects (solar / wind / waste)	1.5	IDP and SDF: No. SDF: S4.3.10 TRANSPORTATION - As far as the N17 is concerned, an option which could be considered is the rerouting of the road through the vacant floodplain between Ermelo and Wesselton, as conceptually indicated on Map 37 (which is through the open space system). S2.5.3.5 VACANT LAND - land may however not be developable due to floodlines and adverse soils conditions	0	IDP: Climate change identified as a threat. Projects: 1. Global Warming (unpredictable climate Change) - Project 1: Awareness programme and workshops; Project 2: 1 Strategy. IDP states - DM is developing an air quality management plan. LED indicates greenhouse gases (as per provincial SOER), but no projects or programmes. IDP: 2 wards requested recycling. Some houses have solar panels.	1	IDP: Swot Analysis - Threat - Global warming and climate change. SDF includes swot analysis. No indication or mention of floods in any documents. Project: Recycling Centre. 1% of houses have solar panels.	0.5	IDP: Climate change indicated in Waste Management Section (5.5.3. Integrated Waste Management Plan) - reference to composting. IDP: Recycling plant and waste management as a turn-around strategy for municipality; Renewable energy- generation of energy from waste and other bio-products including hydro –power. Solar and energy saving. Solar geysers and street lights and installations of LED lights. SDF: Mentions climate change with reference to risks to economic development; and the MBSP 2014. SDF: Flood damage to infrastructure places pressure on an already financially stretched area. The fact that the SDF contains the MBSP 2014 allows a higher score - incorporates buffers.SDF includes ESA: Strategic Water Source Areas.	1.5
7	2	Key biodiversity legislation to demonstrate awareness for compliance (Score 0-2)	IDP: NEMAQ, abbreviation NEMA. SDF: NEMAQ. No sub-section.	0	IDP: No. SDF: Notes NEMA in terms of land use changes and EMF.	0	IDP: S6.5.7..1. Environmental Management - Legislative Frame. SDF notes NEMA regarding land use changes.	0.5	IDP: No legislative section under environmental management. NEMWA and NEMAQ noted.	0.5	IDP: No. SDF: Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations from the National Environmental Act, 108 of 1996. No sub-section of legislation.	0	IDP: NEMWA, NEMA referenced in terms of waste management. SDF: NEMBA.	0.5

No	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Gert Sibande DM	Score	Govan Mbeki LM	Score	Msukaligwa LM	Score	Ehlanzeni DM	Score	Bushbuckridge LM	Score	Thaba Chweu LM	Score
8	1	Environmental projects (Score 0 - 1)	<p>IDP: S7.6 GSDM FLAGSHIP PROJECTS - Unfunded - 1.1. Chief Albert Luthuli Wind Energy Project, 1.2. Mkhondo Hydro Electrical power plant, 1.3. Power generation from Solid Waste through Gasification; 5.2. Finalize feasibility study and action plan for the Bio - Diesel project 7.1. Establish District Planners forum to assess development, mining license applications and other Environmental Impact Issues (and comment on these) in line with the requirements of the proposed NEMA and Environmental Management Plan (EMP). PORTFOLIO: COMMUNITY AND SOCIAL SERVICES (MUNICIPAL HEALTH SERVICES) - Development Principle 1 - Listing of 12 projects (See point 25); Development Principle 6 - recycling. Development Principle 8 - 8.1 Support implementation of Environmental Management Framework / Integrated waste management and Air quality management plans approved by the district. Development of a Integrated Water Conservation and Demand Management Plan. EPWP programme. 7.7 GSDM ALLOCATION-PROPOSED PROJECTS 2014/2015 - Green drop testing, 7.8. SECTOR PROJECTS 2014/2015</p>	1	<p>IDP Projects / programmes: 10.2. CAPITAL BUDGET 2014/2015 - Environmental Management Framework (EMF), Quality Testing-Blue and Green Drop. IDP 2014 - 2015: page 152 onwards: Green drop, EPWP jobs, water management to reduce water losses (in terms of KPA: Financial viability). LED project proposed: Renewable energy projects (solar / wind / waste). <b>LIMITED PROJECTS.</b></p>	0.5	<p>IDP: S6.5.4. Future LED Projects - DEDET funding for Environmental Protection &amp; Infrastructure Projects (EPIP) - part of greening flagship projects. EPWP Jobs but project type not indicated. S8.2. Municipal Projects and Programmes: Municipal funded - Water quality testing – blue and green drop; Tree Planting; Removal of alien plants. Unfunded – Implementation of EPIP projects (DEDET funding). S9.1.10. Integrated EMP - needs revision. S9.1.15. EMF in place. IDP S6.5.7.2 Green Economy - LM engaging with ESKOM to id process for solar geysers. <b>Limited projects. No indication that SDF or EMP must be reviewed in projects, especially since EMF is available.</b></p>	0.5	<p>IDP: EMP under development. Plan, Table 8 : Performance Results for FY2012/13: Integrated Waste Management Plan, Disaster Management Plan; Environmental Management Framework and Air Quality Management Plan completed. Bio-mass energy (Reduce waste to the land fill sites and improve sanitation); Projects: 1. Global Warming (unpredictable climate Change) - Project 1: Awareness programme and workshops; Project 2: 1 Strategy. IDP states - DM is developing an air quality management plan. IDP: 2 wards requested recycling.</p>	1	<p>IDP: Water conservation and demand management. (construction of reservoirs); BLM Water master plan; Spatial Planning and Land Use Management: Development of an Integrated Energy Centre(IeC); Local Economic Development projects: Community greening project; Biomass pilot project; Kruger to Canyon biosphere; Cleaning and General Maintenance of Tourism Attractions; Integrated Local Economic, Biodiversity and Catchment Management in Bushbuckridge; Bushbuckridge Street Cleaning and Greening Project; Bushbuckridge Greening Projects; Youth Environmental Services -Environmental Protection and Infrastructure Programme(EPIP); Working on Waste (EPIP); Greening and Open Space Management(EPIP); Working For Land ( EPIP) -Rehabilitate degrade land using indigenous and advance technologies; People and Parks(EPIP)-Support to Biodiversity conservation by creating and rehabilitating infrastructure; Wildlife Economy(EPIP); Revitalization of Andover Game Reserve. Environmental and waste projects: Greening; Ecosystem rehabilitation and fencing nature reserve; Environmental management framework; Environmental Policy &amp; Implementation Plan; Kruger to Canyon Biosphere; Wetland assessment and rehabilitation; Sorting-at-Source Pilot Project (recycle re use waste); Recycling Centre; Implementation of Integrated Waste Management Plan (IWMP); Rehabilitation &amp; development of landfill site; CRDP projects: Infrastructural upgrade of Nature reserves (Andover). <b>GOOD.</b> LED: S7.3.Spatial prioritisation - 5. Environmental management projects (as funded via the Neighbourhood Development Partnership Grants)- (a) Greening, street lighting and paving</p>	1	<p>IDP: CHAPTER 9 (Projects) - THALEDA Programmes and Projects - Waste management and income generation - Recycling plant and waste management; Lydenburg - Upgrading of the municipal owned nature reserve and Museum; Energy Project - Renewable energy-generation of energy from waste and other bio-products including hydro – power. Solar and energy; Waste Management: Creating a Recycling Plant at Lydenberg; Rehabilitation of the Landfillsites. (OTHER: To have the SDF amended and approved; Dolomite Risk Management Study). IDP Strategy: Recycling plant and waste management as a turn-around strategy for municipality; Renewable energy- generation of energy from waste and other bio-products including hydro –power. Solar and energy saving. Solar geysers and street lights and installations of LED lights.</p>	1

No	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Gert Sibande DM	Score	Govan Mbeki LM	Score	Msukaligwa LM	Score	Ehlanzeni DM	Score	Bushbuckridge LM	Score	Thaba Chweu LM	Score
9	2	Water quality and quantity with linkage to IDP projects (Score 0-2)	IDP: TABLE 33: WATER QUALITY CHALLENGES AND RECOMMENDED STRATEGIC ACTIONS, Table 32: Green Drop Performance (Risk Profile and Log by Municipal Area) in Mpumalanga for 2011-2012. Key issues to be addressed pertaining to water and sanitation at Local Municipality level: Most of the municipalities do not have water conservation and demand management strategies or programmes, and few have systems for performing water balances. • Very little work is currently being performed on this vital aspect of water services, with little or no expertise available within the GSDM area to perform the required work. • General operations and maintenance of the water and sewerage reticulation • Development of maintenance, refurbishment and water quality monitoring plans • Municipalities to improve on the frequency and number of water quality samples that are analysed. Good awareness but lack of NWA and reserve.	1	IDP: Green Drop.	1	IDP: Green Drop.	1	IDP: Table 7: Green –drops (soil quality) - soil quality is presumably error.	0.5	IDP: No green drop. S3.6. ENVIRONMENTAL ISSUES - 3.6.1. Blue drop (water quality).	0	Green drop, national water act and reserve not indicated.	0
10	1	Environmental sustainability (Score 0 - 1)	IDP: 20.3 Development Principles: Principle 1: To actively protect, enhance and manage the natural environmental resources of the District, in order to ensure a sustainable equilibrium between biodiversity conservation, mining, manufacturing and industrial activities, agriculture, forestry, and tourism related activities within the District. Principle 3: To utilise the existing natural environmental, cultural-historic and man-made activity areas within the District as Tourism Anchors and Nodes; National outcome 10, Strategic Priority 9: Sustainable resource management and use (MTSG and Millenium Development Goal), Provincial: • Sustainability: improve viable and sustainable natural resource utilisation. KPA 6: SPATIAL RATIONALE AND MUNICIPAL PLANNING ALIGNMENT - Stimulate integrated and sustainable and shared Regional Development through aligned Spatial Planning. SDF Objective: • To promote sustainable development in terms of natural and built environment conservation.	1	IDP: KPA 5: SAFETY AND ENVIRONMENT = translation of provincial Key Priority Area 4: Sustainable Environmental Development Strategic Thrust: – To ensure sustainable development and environmental management. KPA 5 - Key Focus Area = Environmental Management	1	IDP: National and provincial sustainability requirements included. S6.5.7. EMP	1	IDP: The overall objective of the annual IDP assessment session is to:Support and improve the content of the MEC commenting process so as to ensure we move towards a sustainable environment. 5.2.4. SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT PRIORITIES - sustainable development. 5.5.10. ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT - focus on waste and air pollution due to mandate.	1	IDP Priority Environmental Management - Strategy A: Implement compliance monitoring to environmental legislation and best practices. Strategy B: Ensure municipal projects comply with environmental legislation. Strategy B: Ensure Spatial Development Frameworks incorporate environmental parameters to curtail rural sprawl and habitat fragmentation. Strategy C: Greening Strategy D: Promotion of environmental education and awareness campaigns. Strategy E: Promote protection and rehabilitation of wetland. Strategy F: Open space conservation and management.	1	IDP: To ensure sustainable development and growth. Core Values - Environmental conservation. Compared with other municipalities this is not as focused on environmental sustainability. SDF: Priority 5: The responsible use and management of the natural environment requires	0.5

No	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Gert Sibande DM	Score	Govan Mbeki LM	Score	Msukaligwa LM	Score	Ehlanzeni DM	Score	Bushbuckridge LM	Score	Thaba Chweu LM	Score
11	1	Environmental Management as a Key Performance Area (KPA) (Score 0 - 1)	No.	1	MUNICIPAL KPA 5: SAFETY AND ENVIRONMENT - one of the objectives is 'Ensure a sustainable environment'. However, association with safety does not permit proper translation to biodiversity management and conservation. KPA 5 - Key Focus Area = Environmental Management	0.5	No.	0	KPA : SPATIAL RATIONALE (ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT AND SUSTAINABILITY). A score of 1 allocated as environment and sustainability under national KPA spatial rationale.	1	IDP: No.	0	IDP: No.	0
12	3	Inclusion of EMF, biosphere reserve (& TFCA for Ba-Phalaborwa LM & Bushbuckridge LM with maximum score of 3) (Score 0-1; 0-2 or 0-3)	IDP: Gert Sibande DM Integrated Environmental Management Framework/ Plan submitted to council. SDF predates IDP and Letaba EMF dated 2009. No biosphere or TFCA.	1	Local EMF budgetted for. Letaba EMF not indicated. No biosphere reserve or TFCA in LM.	0	Local EMF developed. Letaba EMF not indicated. No biosphere reserve or TFCA.	1	IDP: 5.2.3.3. THE LIMPOPO TRANS FRONTIER PARK - Kruger to Canyon noted. Table 8 : Performance Results for FY2012/13 - states EMF done.	3	Letaba EMF 2009 not indicated in IDP, but the SDF does - S3.4.5. Olifants and Letaba River Catchment Areas EMF (2009). A municipal EMF indicated in IDP projects. Biosphere reserve is indicated in IDP, LED and SDF. Kruger National Park indicated not TFCA.	2	Letaba EMF 2009 not indicated in IDP or SDF. SDF recommends potential for EMF. TFCA and BR not applicable.	0
13	1	Inclusion of Protected Areas and Conservation areas (at minimum the SDF map should include these areas, while the IDP summary biodiversity map should include these areas). (Score 0-1)	IDP: Notes 'The concentration of conservation and protected areas also increases towards the east.' 'The District also boasts the following attractive leisure and conservation areas'. Map 5: Spatial Structure and Transportation Network includes nature reserves. SDF: Figure 12b: Conservation and Environmental Heritage Areas	1	No Protected Areas or Conservation Areas in LM.		Map 24 of SDF includes conservancies, which is included in IDP. No formal PA in LM.	1	IDP: Section on Nature Reserves - Map 7 of SDF. Figure 38: Protected areas and parks	1	IDP: S5.5.1. Tourism - Kruger National Park (KNP), Manyeleti and various renowned private nature reserves such as Mhala-Mhala, Sabie-Sabie, Phungwe and others located along the boundary of the KNP. SDF: Existing Nature Reserves in and around the study area include (see Figure 18).	0.5	IDP: Table 11. List of Nature Reserves, NR (not distinguished) in Map 07. SDF: Map 7 (a): Protected Areas - formal and includes contract protected areas declared through the biodiversity stewardship programme. Neither IDP or SDF not appear to include CA.	0.5
14	1	Inclusion of National Protected Areas Expansion Strategy Focus Areas	IDP & SDF: No.	0	NPAES not in LM.		NPAES not in LM.		IDP: No.	0	IDP & SDF: No.	0	IDP and SDF: No.	0
15	1	Inclusion of spatial biodiversity priority areas - CBA, ESA, NFEPA, systematic biodiversity plans based. (Score 0-1)	SDF: Includes 2006 Mpumalanga BCP. IDP does not.	0.5	SDF: Includes 2006 Mpumalanga BCP. IDP does not.	0.5	SDF: Although the MBCP 2006 is referenced the map of biodiversity does not reflect the MBCP categories.	0	IDP: No.	0	<b>SDF: 'highly significant' biodiversity (see Figure 17a) - suggests MCBP 2006? - NO MAPS TO ASSESS.</b> Score 0.5 still allocated. IDP: No.	0.5	SDF: Includes Biodiversity Sector Plan - The MBSP identifies both terrestrial and fresh water priority areas in terms of reaching biodiversity targets. The spatial extent of these areas in the TCLM is shown on Map 7 (b) Terrestrial Priority Areas and Map 7 (c) Fresh Water Priority Areas.13. IDP: No.	0.5
16	1	Inclusion of land use / development guidelines specific to CBA, ESA, NFEPA, systematic plans (Score 0-1)	SDF: MBCP guidelines Table 2: Land Use Suitability per Biodiversity Category. However, not included in IDP.	0.5	SDF and IDP: No the MCBP land use guidelines not incorporated.	0	SDF and IDP: No.	0	IDP: No.	0	IDP and SDF: No.	0	IDP and SDF: No.	0

No	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Gert Sibande DM	Score	Govan Mbeki LM	Score	Msukaligwa LM	Score	Ehlanzeni DM	Score	Bushbuckridge LM	Score	Thaba Chweu LM	Score
17	2	Inclusion of appropriate natural resource management issues in IDP, LED, SDF; and environmental programmes (Score 0 - 2)	IDP: No. SDF: S3.4.6 SOER: District Wide Environmental Concerns - soil and vegetation degradation, removal, soil pollution, water pollution, water quantity (pressure on resource), biodiversity loss, wetland loss, air pollution. Programmes/ projects: Refer above point 10 - good listing of programmes. IDP: S3.3.4 Strategic Development Initiatives: The GSDM falls within the Highveld high intervention priority area. Environmental degradation is highly noticeable in the district due to extensive opencast mining and deforestation and electricity generation from coal-fired Power Station. IDP does not include issues therefor score 1.5.	1.5	Risks - SDF: S2.12.4 VEGETATION AND BIODIVERSITY - Urbanization; Other threats - afforestation, loss of riverine and wetland/marsh habitat, agriculture and livestock modification, invasive alien plants and trees, food scarcity for fauna as a result of habitat loss (also results in loss of biodiversity), poisoning, disturbance through human activities (and domestic dogs and cats) such as hunting and off-road vehicles etc, and human-made structures such as high-tension cables. S2.12.6 POLLUTION. Refer Environmental Projects (programmes) - point 10. <b>Not adequate.</b>	1.5	SDF includes threats (Point 5.4) but not the IDP. Programmes/projects included (point 10).	0.5	5.5.10. ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT: Uncoordinated and informal settlement growth has led to pollution and the degradation of the natural environment. This has been compounded by inappropriate agrarian practices resulting in soil erosion and water pollution because of ineffective sanitation and waste removal systems. Reliance on wood as energy source has resulted in the degradation of trees in the area. Littering and inappropriate land use management activities have further degraded the natural environment. Refer projects above. Provincial "Greening Mpumalanga Flagship Programme" - urban parks	1.5	IDP: Issues in S5.1.9. Environmental Management but no sub-section and appear to be limited. SDF: Indicates issues - fragmented in document and no concise section. Extensive programmes, but not all issues covered, e.g. pollution of rivers.	1.5	IDP and SDF: Issues section not provided. Waste and air pollution in IDP under waste management. Programmes linked to these. Not adequate issues.	1
18	1	Inclusion of ecosystem services (Score 0-1)	SDF: Furthermore, wetlands function as landscape amenities by helping with hydrologic management, flood attenuation, stormwater control, erosion control, and pollution control. Consequently, wetland areas should be avoided for development purposes. Use of the MBCP 2006 in SDF indicates incorporation of ecosystem services.	0.5	Word or concept not included in IDP or SDF. Use of the MBCP 2006 in SDF indicates incorporation of ecosystem services.	0.5	Word or concept not included in IDP or SDF. SDF: Although the MBCP 2006 is referenced the map of biodiversity does not reflect the MBCP categories.	0	IDP: Furthermore, inappropriate forestry practices such as planting too close or in a wetland can cause them to dry out and can result in the loss of the environmental services that these important wetland systems provide and as an important habitat for biodiversity. Although not complete definition, allocated 0.5.	0.5	IDP: BLM recognizes the contribution and significant role played by the natural environment in provision of sustainable services to its constituents. SDF: 'highly significant' biodiversity (see Figure 17a) - suggests MBCP 2006? - NO MAPS TO ASSESS.	1	SDF: Ecosystem services in relation to ESA and wetlands - category i.e. Includes Biodiversity Sector Plan 2014. Word or concept not included in IDP or SDF.	0.5
19.1	1	Key environmental drivers (Score 0-1)	Refer point 19 above. SDF: S3.4.6 SOER: District Wide Environmental Concerns - soil and vegetation degradation, removal, soil pollution, water pollution, water quantity (pressure on resource), biodiversity loss, wetland loss, air pollution. Programmes/ projects: Refer above point 10 - good listing of programmes.	1	Refer Point 19 above.	1	SDF: The major threats to the natural biota - human population growth, transformation of land and urbanization; mining, especially open-cast coal mining; crop cultivation and afforestation; overgrazing; and loss of riverine and wetland/marsh habitat through human intervention. S2.11.6 POLLUTION - air and water.	1	5.5.10. ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT - Pollution, degradation of the natural environment; inappropriate agrarian practices resulting in soil erosion; water pollution (ineffective sanitation and waste removal systems); wood fuel harvesting - degradation of trees; Littering and inappropriate land use management activities have further degraded the natural environment. LED: S3.5. ENVIRONMENTAL- AND TOURISM SECTORS - Key Environmental Issues as identified within Ehlanzeni DM (based on Provincial SOER).	1	RISKS: IDP - The biggest threat to natural resources is rural sprawl and illegal sand mining which threaten mainly sensitive environments such as rivers, wetlands, ridges and rare vegetation. SDF: In accordance with the EMF (Letaba EMF), the constraints in this area are: Due to over-allocation of water in the remainder of the catchment areas the ecological reserve requirements are not being met, with negative results for conservation; and Excessive medicinal plant harvesting especially in indigenous forests. SDF: groundwater pollution due to sanitation. Air pollution is very high because of the use of firewood for cooking and due to veld fires during winter season (which also affect forestry). - under Engineering.	1	Waste and air pollution in IDP under waste management.	0.5

No	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Gert Sibande DM	Score	Govan Mbeki LM	Score	Msukaligwa LM	Score	Ehlanzeni DM	Score	Bushbuckridge LM	Score	Thaba Chweu LM	Score
19.2	1	Key social drivers (Score 0-1)	IDP: 2.9.3. Unemployment, youth unemployment, poverty. IDP: HIV, inadequate sports facilities, social and health services, educational facilities, backlogs in housing, sanitation, water, electrification, rural roads, waste management.	1	IDP: Poverty, unemployment, inequality, HIV/AIDS, crime, high population, backlogs in housing, water, sanitation. Inadequate sports and recreational, educational, health facilities. Not easy to determine challenges as no distinct sub-section or social analysis.	1	IDP: Backlog in water, sanitation, waste removal, housing, HIV & AIDS, shortage of educational facilities, libraries, sports facilities. Not all social items have challenges indicated.	1	Waste management, transport, unemployment, HIV/AIDS, poverty, inequality, Inadequate basic service delivery - backlogs in housing, sanitation, water, electricity, social services, education, waste management. Inadequate health services. High crime. Inadequate or lack of sports facilities. Insufficient libraries.	1	IDP: Unemployment, lack of and inadequate schools and libraries, inadequate medical services, HIV/AIDS, TB, insufficient housing, water, sanitation, roads, electrification, waste management, sports and recreational facilities.	1	IDP: Unemployment, Inadequate health facilities, HIV/AIDS, STIs and TB, backlog in Access and quality improvement to Water, Sanitation (Sewer expansion and development, Road (refurbishment and maintenance); electricity; inadequate sports facilities and recreational facilities.	1
20	1	EIA and other regulations (Score 0-1)	IDP: S7.1. Establish District Planners forum to assess development, mining license applications and other Environmental Impact Issues (and comment on these) in line with the requirements of the proposed NEMA and Environmental Management Plan (EMP). Green drop, but no sub-section on legislation.	0.5	SDF indicates EIA for agricultural enterprises. Not adequate (one mention).	0	SDF indicates EIA for agricultural enterprises. Not adequate (one mention).	0	IDP: PROVINCIAL SECTOR PROJECTS 2014/15 - indicates EIA required or not, but not indicated in other. Wastewater legislation not indicated but green drop mentioned.	0.5	IDP: No. SDF and LED: indicates for projects but not adequate. No wastewater regs.	0.5	IDP: three projects indicated for EIAs. SDF: No.	0.5
21	2	Manage disaster risk (Score 0-2) For a Score 2 to be allocated there should be strategic identification of flood prone areas in SDF (on a map), as a minimum.	IDP: S3.2.14. DISASTER MANAGEMENT. Approved 2009. Flooding (storm water and natural). SDF: Not adequate at all.	1	IDP: S6.7 DISASTER MANAGEMENT. SDF: Many of these settlements (informal) are situated in low-lying areas within the 1:100 year floodplains.	1	IDP: S6.1.7.13 Disaster Management; and S9.1.3 Disaster Management Plan. SDF: Flood prone areas not indicated, but road proposed in floodplain and S2.5.3.5 VACANT LAND - might not be developable due to flood lines.	1	IDP S10.2. DISASTER MANAGEMENT PLAN. Flooding only mentioned as potential disaster. LED does not mention flooding, but global warming listed as issue. <b>No SDF to assess flood considerations.</b>	0.5	IDP: S5.3. Disaster Management - disaster management plan approved in 2008, reviewed 2011.	0.5	IDP: Disaster Management Plan adopted 2007. S5.4. Disaster management - inadequate and outdated. IDP & SDF do not mention floods etc.	0.5
22	3	Extent of integration / cross-referencing (Score 0 -3)	IDP: S 3.6. KPA 6: SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT AND ANALYSIS AND RATIONALE - S3.6.1 District Land Use And Spatial Development. SDF: S3.1.10 GERT SIBANDE INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN (IDP) PRIORITY ISSUES. However, no SDF maps.	2	IDP: SDF and LED referenced in IDP. SDF includes IDP generic but not specific issues or objectives. LED references IDP key issues and has section on SDF.	1	IDP: SDF and LED referenced in IDP. SDF includes IDP and LED Focus Areas. LED references IDP key issues and has section on SDF.	2	IDP references SDF and LED. LED references IDP and SDF. <b>No SDF to assess.</b>	2	SDF references IDP, but IDP not an adequate reflection of detailed SDF. LED references IDP and SDF.	2	SDF references IDP, but IDP not an adequate reflection of detailed SDF.	2

No	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Gert Sibande DM	Score	Govan Mbeki LM	Score	Msukaligwa LM	Score	Ehlanzeni DM	Score	Bushbuckridge LM	Score	Thaba Chweu LM	Score
23	2	Alignment of overlapping municipalities - Environmental issues and management (Score 0 -2)	The DM indicates district wide issues and extensive programmes. Additional programmes - IDP s7.6 GSDM FLAGSHIP PROJECTS - Development Principle 1: S 1.1.Establishment of environmental conservation clubs [capacity building /MHS]; 1.2. Support of air quality management plans programs;[ Air quality management]; 1.3.Waste reduction through recycling, re-use ,recovery, projects and programs;[ waste management / job creation]; 1.4.Review of integrated waste management plans;[IWMP]; 1.5.Environmental protection - removal of alien and invasive plants;[working for water / job creation]; 1.6.Water conservation - revival and clearing of wetlands [working for water]; 1.7.Rehabilitation of waste disposal sites projects through establishment of community parks; [pollution control]; 1.8.Soil rehabilitation and conservation through cleanup projects; [pollution control / job creation]; 1.9.Promotion and conservation of bio- diversity through expansion of conservation / revival, development of parks and protected areas; [ protection of environment / job creation]; 1.10. Promotion and support of renewable energy programs and projects;[Air quality management]; 1.11. Promotion and support of climate change and greenhouse gases reduction programs and projects; [Air quality management / job creation]; 1.12. Environmental Pollution prevention and rehabilitation of the environment through elimination of illegal waste dumping areas, land reclamation , clean up of water sources, and greening	2	IDP does not indicate issues, only SDF. Issues do not correspond and programmes not well aligned.	0.5	IDP does not indicate issues, only SDF. Issues fairly well aligned, many District programmes do not appear to be included though.	1	IDP: There is no issues section, although environmental management section identifies - pollution, soil erosion, land degradation etc (Point 19). LED only indicates list of provincial SOER issues. Provincial SOER not indicated in IDP.	1	Issues and management not well aligned. Refer point 10 and 21.1 for comparisons.	1	The LM does not indicate adequate issues. Refer point 10 and 21.1 for comparisons.	1
24	1	Monitoring & evaluation (Score 0-1)	SDF: S5.1. Capital Investment Framework (Priority Projects) and Implementation Monitoring and Evaluation Guidelines. IDP: CHAPTER FOUR: ORGANISATIONAL PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS. Monitoring and review: Review of District SDF to align with LM SDF's and include LUMS Framework and submission to Council for approval. KPI: % of Capital projects as identified in the IDP completed (excl., multiyear projects	1	IDP: CHAPTER 8: PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT - implementation and monitoring of the IDP projects. Monitoring and Evaluation Forum. IDP 2014-2015: monitoring and evaluation indicated as average (Section KPA 1). SDF: No.	0.5	IDP: S8.1.1 Performance Management, and S9.1.6 Performance Management Plan. No monitoring indicated for SDF.	0.5	IDP S10.24 DISTRICT WIDE PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM POLICY FRAMEWORK. STEP 7: MONITORING & EVALUATION. S5.4.1. PERFORMANCE MONITORING & EVALUATION. Number of sectoral and integrated infrastructural plans developed/reviewed - indicated as satisfactory or achieved target. However, swot analysis states: In-effective M& E	0.5	IDP: S6. Performance Management System; S6.2. Service Delivery Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP). S4.4. Municipal Goals and Strategic Objectives - Monitoring the implementation of capital projects and services; Conduct constant monitoring of municipal services. S4.5. Priority Issue - Environmental Management - Strategy A: Implement compliance monitoring to environmental legislation and best practices. SDF: 5.1 Implementation and Monitoring Mechanisms	1	IDP: S6.11 Performance Management System and Monitoring and evaluation. 7. CHAPTER 7 (Performance management system). IDP states: The municipality has lack of capacity in the most critical units which include IDP, performance management system (PMS). SDF: S8 MONITORING, EVALUATION AND REVIEW - recommendations.	0.5

No	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Gert Sibande DM	Score	Govan Mbeki LM	Score	Msukaligwa LM	Score	Ehlanzeni DM	Score	Bushbuckridge LM	Score	Thaba Chweu LM	Score
25	1	Evidence of financial capacity (Score 0-1)	IDP projects funded.	1	IDP projects funded but very limited. IDP states - CHALLENGES - • Insufficient budget to implement IDP projects	0	IDP projects funded but very limited. IDP states - Insufficient budget for other programmes therefore insufficient budget for environment likely.	0.5	IDP projects funded. IDP Swot Analysis - Strengths § Financial Viability	1	IDP Projects budgetted, a good list of projects. Swot Analysis indicates - Lack of revenue enhancement and collection strategy. Former overrides latter.	1	IDP Projects budgetted, however SWOT analysis indicates § Lack of finance and financial support	0.5
26	1	Evidence of environmental staff capacity (Score 0-1). Dedicated unit allocate score of 1.	IDP: Possible Future Priority Initiatives/Projects following from the SDF: Development Principle 1 - Establishment of District Environmental Management Unit/Office. - Compilation of a District Environmental Management Plan incorporating District SDF proposals. Dept: Planning & Economic Development - <b>Environmental Planning.</b> IDP: Recruitment and retention of specialised and skilled personnel to render municipal health and environment issues. Latter indicates lack of capacity (dedicated unit). SDF: Implication / Actions: • The establishment of Environmental Management Unit / Office.	0.5	IDP: S6.4. Environmental management - focuses on waste management and air pollution. Environmental Services falls under Community Services - not biodiversity conservation. Bio-diversity & Open Spaces (Landscape) indicates 69 employees, which shows this function is more to do with parks and recreation. Environmental IDP 2014/15 - KPA 5: SAFETY AND ENVIRONMENT - Management (Effectiveness) was rated poorly.	0	No organogram to assess. No dedicated department though.	0	IDP: Organogram - MANAGER: Planning, Municipal Health and Environmental Management. Organogram shows Environmental Health officers - not strictly biodiversity conservation, rather associated with waste management and air pollution.	0	Website indicates Environmental Management Unit - falls under Economic Development, planning & the Environment, but in the organogram only indicated as Economic Development and Planning.	0.5	IDP: Detailed organogram not available. No section dedicated to environmental management.	0
27	1	Key institutional issues (Score 0-1). A score of 1 is allocated if institutional issues recognize environmental element/climate change.	IDP: Financial and human constrains; recruit and retain special skills and managers; Key Issues regarding organisational structure: • Putting in place an organizational structure; • Create a conducive environment - lead to a sustainable retention of institutional memory; • Improve knowledge management among staff members; • Sustain Strategic Leadership through ensuring harmonious working relations between both Political and Administration components within the District. Key Issues regarding Institutional Capacity: • Retention and scarcity of skills (Engineers, Accountants, Planners etc); • Capacity development of officials and Councillors; • Organisational Performance Management and Monitoring; • Compliance with legislative requirements; • Human Resource Development System; • Organisational grading; • Employee Assistance Programme <b>Awareness of environmental component above.</b>	1	IDP: S5.5 GMM CAPITAL PROJECTS 2014/2015 AS PER MUNICIPAL KEY PERFORMANCE AREA ( KPA) - CHALLENGES - • Insufficient budget to implement IDP projects, • Lack of clear prioritization model, • No areas based planning, • Sector plans finalization to inform planning process, • Participation of departments at Steering Committee meetings. No institutional issues section. Difficult to locate institutional challenges. IDP 2014-2015: KPA 1: GOVERNANCE AND STAKEHOLDER PARTICIPATION - indicates average results for committees established.	0.5	IDP Swot Analysis: Weaknesses: Poor implementation of policies and systems, lack of resources, lack of coordination and integration between departments, revenue management, attraction and retention of skilled staff, inadequate revenue collection. Threats: Coordination and communication between all sector departments and spheres of government.	0.5	IDP Swot Analysis -§ Poor Planning (prioritisation) and budgeting; § SILO Planning internally & externally ( no integration); § In-effective M& E; § Lack of capacity of the governance structure (MPAC, Ward Committees, Audit Committee & Good Governance cluster); § Poor consultation with the communities and stakeholders; § Different planning cycles between the spheres of government; § Ineffective support to LM's towards Operation clean audit; § Inadequate usage of Planning Tools; § Inadequate workshoping of policies; Limited human resource capacity; § Lack of communication of government programmes; § Shortage of resources; HR, Finance & Equipment - § Lack of Operation and Maintenance (O&M); § Devolutions of Power ; § Inability to raise own revenue	0.5	IDP Swot Analysis: Lack of development of retention strategy, - Lack of revenue enhancement and collection strategy. IDP S4.5. DEVELOPMENTAL STRATEGY PRIORITY ISSUES - No. 17: Institutional Capacity/Arrangements- Shortage of skilled staff remains a challenge in expediting service delivery in particular within the technical and engineers fields for the smooth implementation of projects. Shortage of work-force in the Municipality is also a problem since the municipality has not yet achieved at-least 80% of the Organogram. Lack of offices and equipments such as machines, trucks, vehicles, etc. hamper the smooth implementation of services. - Lack of scarce skilled employees e.g. Engineers, Technicians and Accountants	0.5	IDP: MUNICIPAL SWOT ANALYSIS: Weaknesses - Lack of master and operating updated sector plans in some departments; § Lack of adequate staff in key directorates; § Lack adequate assets § Unfilled vacancies; § Lack of finance and financial support; § Under spending on annual budget allocated; § Shortage of skills and staff § Failure of overcoming basic services backlog; § Lack of support from provincial departments; § Lack coordination of plans through the IDP Threats - § Demoralisation of dedicated officials; § Bad cooperation (promotion of resignation of professionals); § Chances of institutional non-performance; § Promotion of non-reporting procedure.s	0.5
28	1	Adequate stakeholder engagement (DEDET, SANParks, Working for Water) (Score 0-1)	Based on the projects from external stakeholders, stakeholder participation appears good, however no DEDET projects. IDP S1.5.Environmental protection through projects of removal of alien and invasive plants;[working for water / job creation]. IDP states: Lack of support provided to the municipal health and environmental services – despite the district sitting in an environmentally hazardous situation	0.5	IDP 2014-2015: Participation in IDP and Budget process indicated as average. INTER GOVERNMENTAL RELATIONS (IGR) - IGR forum not satisfactory, and involvement in other forums is average.	0.5	IDP Swot Analysis - Threats: Coordination and communication between all sector departments and spheres of government.	0.5	IDP: Sector projects indicated however, Swot Analysis indicates - Threats: § Poor participation in IGR structures by external stakeholders	0.5	Listing of projects for different sectors, with numerous from DEDET (LED though) but not SANParks. IDP states 'Sector Departments were invited to attend the Public meetings'. CoGTA was requested to co-ordinate the entire sector Departments. One of the raised challenges from sector departments was space to implement projects in some municipalities.	1	Listing of projects for different sectors, with none from DEDET but numerous from Mpumalanga Tourism and Parks Agency (MTPA). However, SWOT analysis states: § Lack of support from provincial departments	0.5

No	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Gert Sibande DM	Score	Govan Mbeki LM	Score	Mskaligwa LM	Score	Ehlanzeni DM	Score	Bushbuckridge LM	Score	Thaba Chweu LM	Score
29		Biodiversity specific documents												
29.1	1	Municipal BSP / Cons Plan (Score 0-1). Provide references to provincial biodiversity plans & incorporation into final desired spatial outcome	Provincial Mpumalanga BCP 2006 included in SDF. <b>No maps to assess final SDF compared with BCP.</b>	0	Provincial Mpumalanga BCP 2006 included in SDF. Final SDF map 34 does not reflect MCBP important areas i.e. Rural LED and land reform identified in Highly Significant, Important and Necessary.	0	Provincial Mpumalanga BCP 2006 referenced in SDF, but the biodiversity map is not the MCBP.	0	No SDF to assess.	0	Appears that MCBP 2006 may have been used as referenced in SDF: 'highly significant' biodiversity (see Figure 17a) - suggests MCBP 2006? - <b>NO MAPS TO ASSESS.</b>	0	Provincial Mpumalanga BSP 2014 - This plan is used as the basis for the analysis of environmentally sensitive areas (see section 4.2.6. for more detailed discussion). The CBAs have also been included on the base maps for the SDF maps.	0
29.2	1	EMF (Score 0-1)	IDP: Sector Plan - Integrated Environmental Management Framework	1	IDP: EMF being developed.	0	IDP: EMF developed.	1	IDP: EMF developed in 2012/13 FY	1	Environmental management framework; Environmental Policy & Implementation Plan	1	No. SDF and IDP: District EMF not indicated.	0
29.3	1	EMP (Score 0-1)	IDP and SDF: No.	0	IDP: No EMP.	0	IDP: No EMP.	0	IDP: Environmental Management Plan	1	IDP: Environmental Management Plan adopted in 2006. SDF: S3.4.6. Integrated Environmental Implementation Plan (IEIP), 2008. <b>SDF recommends EMP?</b>	1	No EMP. SDF indicates EMP for open space system but not as a final recommendation.	0
29.4	1	SoER (Score 0-1)	SDF: S3.4.6. SOER: District Wide Environmental Concerns	1	IDP: No.	0	IDP: No.	0	IDP: No.	0	IDP: No.	0	IDP: No.	0
29.5	1	SEA (Score 0-1)	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0
29.6	1	Plans/budget to implement above biodiversity specific tools or update if existing (Score 0-1)	SDF: S4.2.1. formulation and implementation of a District Environmental Management Plan (EMP).	0	IDP: EMF being developed.	1	IDP: EMP to be developed.	1	No.	0	No.	0	IDP: No.	0
30.1	1	BSP / Cons Plan - current	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0
30.2	1	EMF - current	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0
30.3	1	EMP - current	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0
30.4	1	SoER - current	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0
30.5	1	SEA - current	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0
31	1	Other environmental management tools other than those indicated above	IDP: Air quality by-law, EMP recommended by SDF.	0.5	No.	0	No.	0	No.	0	IDP: Environmental Policy & Implementation Plan. SDF: According to the Integrated Environmental Implementation Plan, the Conservation Development Plan for potential conservation areas entails the following	1	No.	0
		<b>GENERAL COMMENTS:</b>	IDP: Greening programme in terms of Schedule 4 & part (b) of the Constitution Environmental promotion. IDP: No sub-section on environmental threats/issues.		No sub-section on environmental threats/issues in IDP. Land Use Zone - Environmental Conservation. Environmental projects limited. IDP 2014 - 2015 and 2015 - 2016 reviewed. Latter had sections incomplete, layout and formatting not as user friendly in some sections. Environmental health focus. Final SDF map 34 does not reflect MCBP important areas i.e. Rural LED and land reform identified in Highly Significant, Important and Necessary.		No environmental analysis or sub-section on environmental threats/issues in IDP. MCBP 2006 referenced but not reflected. Wetland importance highlighted. Proposing national road in floodplain. No air quality management plan.		SDF not sourced. No issues subsection. Unable to determine usage of MCBP 2006. IDP projects list limited. Appears to have EMP and EMF.		No Land use management scheme but a land use management by-law created in 2014. Good projects listing and organization of projects. S3.6. ENVIRONMENTAL ISSUES - 3.6.1. Blue drop (water quality) - this is indicative of environmental health issues rather than biodiversity management issues. First municipality to indicate Letaba EMF in SDF - S3.4.5. Olifants and Letaba River Catchment Areas EMF (2009)		IDP does not mention air quality/management plan or climate change. SDF 2014 includes Mpumalanga 2014 BSP. The only SDF to indicate and map NEMBA listed threatened ecosystems.	

No	Max Score	Mpumalanga Province	Gert Sibande DM	Score	Govan Mbeki LM	Score	Msukaligwa LM	Score	Ehlanzeni DM	Score	Bushbuckridge LM	Score	Thaba Chweu LM	Score
Max Score	62	Total Score	Maximum Score 59	33	Maximum Score 58	24.5	Maximum Score 58	25.25	Maximum Score 62	31.5	Maximum Score 62	30	Maximum Score 60	22
minus LUMS	61		Excludes criterion 5 LUMS		Includes criterion 5 LUMS		Excludes criterion 5 LUMS		Includes criterion 5 LUMS		Includes criterion 5 LUMS		Includes criterion 5 LUMS	
minus TFCA	60	Percentage	No TFCA	55.9	No TFCA	42.2	No TFCA	41.4	TFCA in DM.	50.8	TFCA in LM.	48.4	No TFCA	36.7
minus BR	58	Category	No BR	D	No BR	E	No BR	E	Kruger to Canyon BR in DM.	D	Kruger to Canyon BR in LM.	D	No BR	E
minus NPAES	57	Category Definition	NPAES in DM.	FAIR	NPAES not in LM and No Protected Areas or Conservation Areas in LM.	POOR	NPAES not in LM.	POOR	NPAES in DM.	FAIR	NPAES in LM.	FAIR	NPAES in LM.	POOR

**Table 18.** Gauteng Province: City of Tshwane Metro Municipality - Allocated scores for each criterion per municipality with a brief summary motivation indicating level of social-ecological content.

Note that the City of Tshwane SDFs included a consolidated SDF and regional SDFs.

No	Max Score	Gauteng Province:	City of Tshwane Metro Municipality	Score
1.1	1	IDP (Score 0-1)	Y	1
1.2	1	LEDs (Score 0-1)	Y	1
1.3	1	SDF (Score 0-1)	Y	1
1.4	1	LUM Scheme (Score 0-1)	Tshwane Town Planning Scheme 2008 indicated in 2011 - 2016 IDP and SDF 2012	1
1.5	1	Annual Report	Unknown (not on website)	0
1.6		Documents not sourced	Annual Report	
2.1	1	IDP up to date	No. 2013-2014	0
2.2	1	LEDs up to date	No. 2006	0
2.3	1	SDF up to date	Yes. June 2012.	1
2.4	1	LUM up to date	Tshwane Town Planning Scheme 2008	0
2.5	1	Annual Report up to date	Unknown (not on website)	0
3.1	1	Summary biodiversity section or environmental analysis (Score 0-1). Score of 1 if IDP & SDF contain section.	IDP & SDF: No information on environment, although environment is considered - S5. SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT CONCEPT - 5.3 ENVIRONMENTAL STRUCTURING CONCEPT. REGIONAL SDFs: S2.5 ENVIRONMENTAL STRUCTURING CONCEPTS & S2.5.2 OPEN SPACE AND CONSERVATION AREAS. 3.7 PHYSICAL ENVIRONMENT -3.7.1 Natural Structuring Elements. However, the sections provide very limited environmental information, although lists important watercourses, wetlands, dams, sensitive areas and ridges for protection. Regional SDFs note the use of C-Plan categories for S2.5.3 RURAL MANAGEMENT. S4.8.7 Sensitive Protected Areas /Biodiversity Zone etc. S4.9 OPEN SPACE AND ENVIRONMENTAL AREAS. A score of 0.5 is allocated as it cannot be stated that the SDF does not include environmental data.	0.5
3.2	1	Does the SDF (& IDP) contain land use/development guidelines e.g. avoid wetlands or sensitive areas. (Score 0-1). Score of 1 if IDP & SDF contain section.	IDP & SDF: No. SDF does contain open space network which avoids wetlands, watercourses, ridges. But specific section or table not present. Same with regional SDFs: Rural Zone - Sensitive protected areas. (Combination of C-Plan protected areas), including (Ridges and Streams, Natural resources, Fauna and Flora protected places / areas) - document states zones have guidelines but could not find this in the document (possibly another Rural Document exists); and S4.9 OPEN SPACE AND ENVIRONMENTAL AREAS states: Increased development pressure could cause serious degradation of the natural areas as limited environmental management guidelines exist. Density Map exists showing lower densities for sensitive areas. Clear, concise biodiversity specific land use guidelines are not incorporated, therefore a score of 0 is allocated. The SDF certainly makes provision for the protection of sensitive environments through the maps and zonations.	0
3.3	1	Cross referencing to environmental analysis/environmental concerns/biodiversity data & land use guidelines (Score 0-1)	IDP references SDF - S8. SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK AND CAPITAL INVESTMENT FRAMEWORK. SDF references IDP. LED is not referenced in IDP, although Tshwane Growth and Development Strategy is, which is one of the LED development strategies - but not all of these strategies are mentioned.	0.5
3.4	1	Includes environmental priorities (e.g. CBA, environmental sensitive areas) & risks (Score 0-1). If in both IDP and SDF, Score = 1	IDP: No, no section on open space system although an SDF chapter. SDF: Yes: S4.2.2 OPEN SPACE AND GREEN SYSTEM - The GSDF open space and green system is informed by the provincial dolomite belts, soil fertility for purposes of agricultural activity, conservation areas, ridges, watercourses and heritage sites. Maps - Open Space & Environmental Sensitivity plan. Regional SDFs include C-Plan - Open Space & Environmental Sensitivity plan and Rural Plan with zonation. RISKS: IDP: Environmental pollution as a result of overflowing of sewer from default pump stations and blocked sewer networks. SDF - Climate changes are attributed to rising greenhouse gasses (GHGs) emanating from human activities. These include: urbanisation, land use change, deforestation and land conversion from agricultural use. No risks section. NOTE that Section 10.2 of the SoER summarises the threats and opportunities to the environment of Tshwane, but document not available.	0.5
4	1	Summary biodiversity maps (Score 0 -1). If maps are in IDP & SDF, Score = 1.	IDP: No. SDF: DIAGRAM 26: Urban and Natural Environments. Regional Open Space & Environmental Sensitivity plan have incorporated the GDARD conservation plan's Irreplaceable Areas, Important Areas and Ecological Support Areas (presumably Diagram 26 includes these, but categories not on the map).	0.5
5	1	Does the LUM Scheme include a conservation zone or at minimum consider environmental protection (Score 0-1)	LUM Scheme not available to assess. According to SDF 2012 and SDF 2011 - 2016 - there is a town planning scheme.	
6	2	Climate change & mitigation measures (Score 0-2). The Score of 2 only attained if proper spatial guidelines indicated in SDF (& IDP) e.g. floodlines, buffers, high water yielding areas.	IDP: A flagship programme for the province is the Climate Change Innovation Centre based at the Innovation Hub in Tshwane. Public safety: Issues of climate change and the need for cities to develop adaptation and mitigation measures also supports this focus area. Some of the challenges for the region are: • Floods in informal settlements. Renewable energy - A pilot project on hydropower, solar geysers. SDF: climate change has become one of the defining challenges - S4.5.2 THE GREEN ECONOMY OF SPATIAL PLANNING. <b>DEVELOPMENT OF THE TSHWANE SUSTAINABLE ENERGY AND CLIMATE CHANGE STRATEGY (NOT DATED) - not referenced in IDP or SDF. Air Quality management plan - also not referenced.</b>	1.5
7	2	Key biodiversity legislation to demonstrate awareness for compliance (Score 0-2)	IDP: No. IDP contains legislation but not environmental. SDF: No. SDF contains legislative section but includes Development Facilitation Act etc. but no environmental legislation.	0
8	1	Environmental projects (Score 0 - 1)	IDP Projects: Environmental Management - Atmospheric Pollution Monitoring Network, Green Buildings Programme, Retrofit of Municipal Buildings, Upgrade Greenhouses at Booyens Nursery. Department Of Agriculture and Rural Development - Roodeplaat Nature Reserve: new trail, pipe network and road etc. Leewfontein Nature Reserve - picnic areas. KPA - Sustainable services provision: 15 000 Solar Water Heaters, 31 000 streetlights retrofitted; Focus Area: Sustainable services provision - Solar water programme, Focus Area: Job intensive economic growth - Programme: Jobs through EPWP. Parks development in wards - to green infrastructure while the city promotes environmental justice.	1
9	2	Water quality and quantity with linkage to IDP projects (Score 0-2)	IDP: Although wastewater pollution is an issue, no mention of green drop or General Authorisations.	0
10	1	Environmental sustainability (Score 0 - 1)	IDP: Tshwane 2055 Outcomes - Sustainable Natural Environment; SDF: Promote sustainable use of land resources, sustainable human settlements. To ensure the sustainable use of the Open Space network.	1
11	1	Environmental Management as a Key Performance Area (KPA) (Score 0 - 1)	IDP: No.	0

12	3	Inclusion of EMF, biosphere reserve (& TFCA for Ba-Phalaborwa LM & Bushbuckridge LM with maximum score of 3) (Score 0-1; 0-2 or 0-3)	Letabe EMF 2009 not mentioned. TFCA and BR not applicable.	0
13	1	Inclusion of Protected Areas and Conservation areas (at minimum the SDF map should include these areas, while the IDP summary biodiversity map should include these areas). (Score 0-1)	IDP: Notes Tswaing Crater, Dinokeng and Wonderboom Nature Reserves (region 2), Rhens Nature Reserve (region 4). Projects listing indicates Rooodeplaart Nature Reserve, Marievale Nature Reserve etc - but not mentioned in relevant region. No map. Consolidated SDF: Also notes a few Nature Reserves, but not indication of PA or CA and not indicated on a map. Regional SDFs: Include PA on map.	0.5
14	1	Inclusion of National Protected Areas Expansion Strategy Focus Areas	No.	0
15	1	Inclusion of spatial biodiversity priority areas - CBA, ESA, NFEPA, systematic biodiversity plans based. (Score 0-1)	Yes. SDF: Open Space & Environmental Sensitivity plan have incorporated the GDARD conservation plan's Irreplaceable Areas, Important Areas and Ecological Support Areas. IDP: No mention of C-Plan.	0.5
16	1	Inclusion of land use / development guidelines specific to CBA, ESA, NFEPA, systematic plans (Score 0-1)	IDP & SDF: No. According to regional SDFs there are development guidelines for the rural zones but the table of guidelines could not be found in the SDF and IDP documents.	0
17	2	Inclusion of appropriate natural resource management issues in IDP, LED, SDF; and environmental programmes (Score 0 - 2)	As per point 5.4: RISKS: IDP: Environmental pollution as a result of overflowing of sewer from default pump stations and blocked sewer networks. SDF - Climate changes are attributed to rising greenhouse gasses (GHGs) emanating from human activities. These include: urbanisation, land use change, deforestation and land conversion from agricultural use. No risks section. Issues inclusion therefore not adequate. Projects/programmes indicated in Point 10, also not adequate. No evidence of environmental management plan or EMF etc. etc. Tshwane Environmental Education and Awareness Strategy sourced. SOER not sourced but exists according to latter strategy, and which indicates threats to environment.	0.5
18	1	Inclusion of ecosystem services (Score 0-1)	SDF: 4.5.5 RURAL MANAGEMENT: The NDP 2030 highlights the importance of rural areas, reminding us that despite population shifts from rural to urban areas, the health and wellbeing of the entire population still depends on rural goods and services- food, water, minerals, energy, biodiversity, natural and cultural experiences, labour and land- and this will become increasingly clear in the next few decades, as resources become more constrained. The open space systems includes watercourses and is based on the Gauteng conservation plan. IDP: Socio-Environmental Infrastructure.	1
19.1	1	Key environmental drivers (Score 0-1)	RISKS (point 5.4): IDP: Environmental pollution as a result of overflowing of sewer from default pump stations and blocked sewer networks. SDF - Climate changes are attributed to rising greenhouse gasses (GHGs) emanating from human activities. These include: urbanisation, land use change, deforestation and land conversion from agricultural use. No environmental risks, issues or impacts section.	1
19.2	1	Key social drivers (Score 0-1)	IDP: poverty pockets, water supply remains a critical issue for the future, Meeting housing demand remains one of the City's biggest challenges, Affordable transport, HIV/AIDS, Poverty and inequality, huge service backlogs in some areas - sanitation, water, housing. No section on social drivers makes it difficult to determine what is key.	1
20	1	EIA and other regulations (Score 0-1)	IDP: 1 mention of EIAs. SDF: No.	0.5
21	2	Manage disaster risk (Score 0-2) For a Score 2 to be allocated there should be strategic identification of flood prone areas in SDF (on a map), as a minimum.	IDP: No mention of a Disaster Management Plan only the following listed in projects: Disaster risk management tools and equipment. However, a DMP exists (2007), which contains S10.1 IDP projects contributing to vulnerability and hazard reduction - but not indicated? Settlements in flood prone areas indicated as a risk but no map. SDF: Refer climate change above, but nothing on flooding.	1.5
22	3	Extent of integration / cross-referencing (Score 0 -3)	Integration is considered poor. The fact that the LED or DMP is not referenced is poor. The IDP makes no reference to SDF environmental data.	1
23		Alignment of overlapping municipalities - Environmental issues and management (Score 0 -2)	Not applicable.	
24	1	Monitoring & evaluation (Score 0-1)	IDP: S11. PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT. The Project Management Office in place that was previously lacking. The City's performance is monitored and reviewed on a quarterly and annual basis. SDF: 6.1 PURPOSE OF THE CAPITAL INVESTMENT FRAMEWORK -The intention of the Capital Investment Framework (CIF) is to close the gap between the spatial strategy and implementation on the ground. S6.2 METHODOLOGY -revised and updated annually.	1
25	1	Evidence of financial capacity (Score 0-1)	IDP projects funded, but no indication of financial challenges or swot analysis.	1
26	1	Evidence of environmental staff capacity (Score 0-1). Dedicated unit allocate score of 1.	Department: Environmental Management - falls under OPERATIONS & SERVICE DELIVERY. Acting Strategic Executive Director: Environmental Management. However, Environmental Management department includes road surfacing and Upgrading of Cold Rooms - therefore not strict conservation / biodiversity management. Standing Committee: Agriculture and Environmental Management.	0.5
27	1	Key institutional issues (Score 0-1). A score of 1 is allocated if institutional issues recognize environmental element/climate change.	IDP: No swot analysis or challenges in institutional section. MEC Comment - New structural challenges -need for an Integrated Human Resource Strategy that outlines the process of placement, recruiting and strategies aimed at retaining skilled and competent workforce. Furthermore, the municipality should provide a process plan for the roll-out of an integrated PMS to all regions and various levels with the ultimate aim of cascading such to all officials and councilors within CoT. Need for improved cooperative Governance by intensifying efforts aimed at integration and co-ordination with other spheres of government in the planning, budgeting and delivery of services.	0.5
28	1	Adequate stakeholder engagement (DEDET, SANParks, Working for Water) (Score 0-1)	IDP S5. INTER-GOVERNMENTAL ALIGNMENT. MEC comments: Need for improved cooperative Governance by intensifying efforts aimed at integration and co-ordination with other spheres of government in the planning, budgeting and delivery of services.	0.5
29		Biodiversity specific documents		
29.1	1	Municipal BSP / Cons Plan (Score 0-1). Provide references to provincial biodiversity plans & incorporation into final desired spatial outcome	No evidence of a stand-alone document. Gauteng C-Plan evident in the regional SDFs; & open space & environmental sensitivity map and Open Space Plan for Soshanguva 2008 - Green nodes (ecological) includes important habitats for fauna and flora, and areas representative of local biomes, vegetation types and high ecological sensitivity such as Protected Areas, GDACE Irreplaceable and Important sites - earlier versionfor Soshanguva.	0
29.2	1	EMF (Score 0-1)	IDP & SDF: Does not indicate an EMF.	0
29.3	1	EMP (Score 0-1)	IDP & SDF: Does not indicate an EMP. Integrated Environmental Plan noted in the IDP, therefore score of 1 allocated.	1

29.4	1	SoER (Score 0-1)	According to the Tshwane Environmental Education and Awareness Strategy - SOER exists - S2.3. The Tshwane State of the Environment Report: Section 10.2 of the SoER summarises the threats and opportunities to the environment of Tshwane. Regional SDFs also note SOERs.	1
29.5	1	SEA (Score 0-1)	IDP & SDF: Does not indicate an SEA.	0
29.6	1	Plans/budget to implement above biodiversity specific tools or update if existing (Score 0-1)	IDP & SDF: Does not indicate.	0
30.1	1	BSP / Cons Plan - current	No.	0
30.2	1	EMF - current	No.	0
30.3	1	EMP - current	No.	0
30.4	1	SoER - current	SOER date unknown.	0
30.5	1	SEA - current	No.	0
31	1	Other environmental management tools other than those indicated above	Open Space Management Framework (2005), Atmospheric Pollution Monitoring Network, Environmental Implementation Policy. The Tshwane State of the Environment Report and Environmental Education. DEVELOPMENT OF THE TSHWANE SUSTAINABLE ENERGY AND CLIMATE CHANGE STRATEGY. SDF S8. ACKNOWLEDGMENTS - Reference List: Energy Strategy: The City of Tshwane Metropolitan Municipality. Department of Agriculture and Environmental Management.	1
		<b>GENERAL COMMENTS:</b>	Good biodiversity data - C-Plan - yet poor integration into IDP and consolidated SDF. Although there is an open space system guided by environmental features importance, the IDP and SDF are lacking in biodiversity data. There is no mention of Gauteng C-Plan in IDP or consolidated SDF, but is in the regional SDFs. Environmental Management department - not strict conservation / biodiversity management. Taking into consideration the other plans, the socio-ecological content of the documents assessed does not adequately reflect the management plans and policies that are actually in place. There are several other management tools and an open space system that is based on environmental features but integration, cross referencing and environmental data inclusion is poor. Regional SDFs much better.	
Max Score	60	Total Score		Maximum Score is 56 <b>24.5</b>
minus LUMS				Excludes criterion 5 LUMS
minus TFCA	59	Percentage		TFCA not in Metro <b>43.8</b>
minus BR	58	Category		BR not in Metro <b>E</b>
minus NPAES	57	Category Definition		NPAES in Metro <b>POOR</b>



# award

The Association for Water and Rural Development

AWARD is a non-profit organisation specialising in participatory, research-based project implementation. Their work addresses issues of sustainability, inequity and poverty by building natural-resource management competence and supporting sustainable livelihoods. One of their current projects, supported by USAID, focuses on the Olifants River and the way in which people living in South Africa and Mozambique depend on the Olifants and its contributing waterways. It aims to improve water security and resource management in support of the healthy ecosystems to sustain livelihoods and resilient economic development in the catchment.

P O Box 1919, Hoedspruit 1380, Limpopo, South Africa

**T** 015-793 0503 **W** [award.org.za](http://award.org.za)

Company Reg. No. 98/03011/08

Non-profit org. Reg. No. 006 - 821

## About USAID: RESILIM-O

USAID: RESILIM-O focuses on the Olifants River Basin and the way in which people living in South Africa and Mozambique depend on the Olifants and its contributing waterways. It aims to improve water security and resource management in support of the healthy ecosystems that support livelihoods and resilient economic development in the catchment. The 5-year programme, involving the South African and Mozambican portions of the Olifants catchment, is being implemented by the Association for Water and Rural Development (AWARD) and is funded by USAID Southern Africa.

Copyright © 2018 The Association for Water and Rural Development (AWARD). This material may be used for non-profit and educational purposes. Please contact the authors in this regard, at:

*[info@award.org.za](mailto:info@award.org.za)*

The content of this publication does not necessarily reflect the views of AWARD, USAID or the United States Government.

## Acknowledgements: Project funding and support

The USAID: RESILIM-O project is funded by the U.S. Agency for International Development under USAID/ Southern Africa RESILIENCE IN THE LIMPOPO BASIN PROGRAM (RESILIM). The RESILIM-O project is implemented by the Association for Water and Rural Development (AWARD), in collaboration with partners.

Cooperative Agreement nr AID-674-A-13-00008



**USAID**  
FROM THE AMERICAN PEOPLE

**SOUTHERN AFRICA**